

# Fast Forward

BlackBerry XX Smartphone



User Guide

FOR THE  
FUTURE OF  
THE  
COUNTRY  
WE  
WILL  
FIGHT  
FOR  
THE  
FUTURE  
OF  
THE  
COUNTRY

# Contents

Setup and basics.....	6
New in this release.....	6
Your device at a glance.....	7
What's different about BlackBerry 10?.....	8
Notification icons.....	13
Menu icons.....	13
Setting up your device.....	14
Inserting the micro SIM card and media card.....	15
Using gestures.....	16
Personalizing your device.....	19
Find customer support.....	20
Device Switch.....	20
BlackBerry ID.....	25
Phone and voice.....	30
Phone basics.....	30
Notifications and ring tones.....	38
Voicemail.....	42
Voice Control.....	44
BlackBerry Hub and email.....	50
BlackBerry Hub and email.....	50
BBM.....	74
Facebook.....	74
Twitter.....	74
LinkedIn.....	75
joyn.....	75
Media.....	78
Change the media volume.....	78

Supported audio and video file extensions, formats, and codecs.....	78
Troubleshooting: Media.....	79
Camera.....	80
Pictures.....	85
Music.....	88
Videos.....	91
Media sharing.....	92
Games.....	94
<b>Settings.....</b>	<b>97</b>
Customize your device settings.....	97
How do I update the software on my BlackBerry 10 device?.....	100
Battery and power.....	101
Connections.....	106
BlackBerry Keyboard and typing.....	128
Language.....	136
Keyboard Input Methods.....	138
Screen display.....	147
Accessibility.....	148
Media cards and storage.....	155
BlackBerry Link features on your device.....	160
<b>Applications and features.....</b>	<b>163</b>
Organizing your apps.....	163
Calendar.....	165
Contacts.....	174
Clock.....	181
BlackBerry World.....	185
Android apps.....	189
Maps and GPS.....	190
Browser.....	195
The Smart Tags application explained.....	203
Search your device.....	206
File Manager.....	207

Calculator.....	212
BlackBerry Virtual Expert.....	213
<b>Productivity and work.....</b>	<b>215</b>
Switch between your personal space and work space.....	215
About BlackBerry Balance and your work space.....	215
Remember.....	220
Documents To Go.....	226
Print To Go.....	226
Enterprise IM.....	226
Enterprise IM for Cisco.....	226
BlackBerry Bridge.....	226
BlackBerry Travel.....	227
BlackBerry Work Drives.....	227
Salesforce.....	227
Adobe Reader.....	227
<b>Security and backup.....</b>	<b>228</b>
Passwords and locking.....	228
Backing up your device data.....	233
BlackBerry Protect.....	233
Security settings.....	234
<b>Legal notice.....</b>	<b>239</b>

# Setup and basics

## New in this release

### Introducing BlackBerry 10 OS version 10.2.1

This software update introduces great new features to help you be more productive, and more in control. Discover more ways to prioritize your communications, read web content offline, customize menus, download Android apps, and monitor the battery power level so you can be more productive for longer.

#### The BlackBerry Hub icon **BlackBerry Hub**

The BlackBerry Hub now features customizable notifications, the ability to filter the message list using a pinch gesture, and the ability to compose messages in plain text or rich text.

#### The keyboard icon **BlackBerry Keyboard**

If you often need to type in more than one language, the keyboard allows you to switch languages quickly by pressing the Alt key and the Enter key at the same time. You can turn on or turn off this feature on the Language and Input settings screen.

- [Change your language while typing](#)

#### The Calendar icon **Calendar**

You can view a specific date in the calendar by tapping the top of the screen and selecting a date. You can use existing calendar information to create follow-up meetings, and with the Cisco WebEx Meetings app installed, you can schedule WebEx meetings.

#### The Contacts icon **Contacts**

When you save a contact, you can select the account that you want to save it to, and you can move contacts between accounts. You can create groups within your contacts so that you can easily send messages to everyone in the group, set up meetings, and share files. For each of your contacts, you can set unique notifications for phone calls and different types of messages, including BBM, email, text, and other social feeds.

## The Phone icon Phone

You can answer a call on your device by touching and holding the circle at the bottom of the screen and sliding your finger to the left. Slide your finger to the right to decline a call. You can assign speed dial keys to your contacts and call them directly from the home screen, and you can make calls by typing the contact's name.

## The Browser icon BlackBerry Browser

Save a webpage to your device so that you can read it at a later time, whether you are connected to a network or not. You can also go to your favorite Android app website and download apps to your device. If you use BlackBerry Balance, apps are downloaded to your personal space and can't access the data in your work space. Download apps that you trust. Your device doesn't check the integrity of the APK files that you download.

## The Settings icon Settings

You can set up your device to use a picture password instead of a traditional password. You can specify which options appear in the Quick Settings menu that appears when you swipe down from the top of the home screen. You can also specify the order of these options, and switch between your personal space and work space from the Quick Settings menu.

From the Device Monitor screen, you can view how much storage space and battery power each of your apps is using. You can see information about CPU, memory, and mobile network or Wi-Fi network usage.

### Related information

[The BlackBerry Hub at a glance](#),  
[BlackBerry Keyboard and typing](#),128  
[Notifications and ring tones](#),38  
[Calendar](#),165  
[Contacts](#),174  
[Phone basics](#),30  
[Browser](#),195  
[BlackBerry World](#),185  
[Customize your device settings](#),97  
[Battery and power](#),101

## Your device at a glance

BlackBerry device showing the notification LED and front camera on the front of the device. The lock screen and power on/off button, and the headset jack are featured at the top of the device. The USB port is featured at the bottom of the device. The volume up, volume down, mute and Voice Control buttons are shown on the right of the device.

1. Headset jack
2. Lock screen (Press): Power on/off (Press and hold); Reset (Press and hold for 10 seconds)
3. Notification LED
4. Front camera
5. Volume up
6. Mute (Press): Voice Control (Press and hold)
7. Volume down
8. Unified Connector (supports USB and HDMI)

## What's different about BlackBerry 10?

If you're new to a BlackBerry 10 device, you might be eager to learn more about what makes it different from other BlackBerry devices. Find information about the home screen, menus, settings, messages, notifications, and apps. Learn where to find your phone number and PIN and find out how to cut, copy, and paste text.

## How do I get back to the home screen?

- In many apps, you can tap **Image Back** to return to the previous screen.
- To minimize an app and return to the home screen, swipe up from the bottom of the screen.

BlackBerry device showing a directional arrow moving upwards from the bottom of the screen to minimize an app and return to the home screen.

## How do I get to the menu?

There is no **Menu** Menu key on BlackBerry 10 devices. You can find additional features and options by exploring the menus.

Do any of the following:

- To see additional actions that you can perform in an app, tap **The more actions icon** or **The more tabs icon**.

BlackBerry device showing a tap on the More icon in the lower right corner of the screen. Shows the gesture to see additional actions.

- To see the additional actions for a specific item, such as a song or a picture, touch and hold the item.

**Note:** To see the names of the menu items that appear on the right side of the screen, touch and hold the icon.



## How do I change my settings and options?

Do any of the following:

- To find the settings and help for an app, swipe down from the top of the screen.

BlackBerry device showing a directional arrow starting from above the top of the screen and moving downward. Shows the gesture to see the settings.

- To find the settings for the device, swipe down from the top of screen. Tap **The Settings icon. Settings.**

**Note:** In an app, use two fingers and swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap **The Settings icon. Settings.**

BlackBerry device showing two directional arrows starting from above the top of the screen and moving downward. Shows the gesture to see the settings for the device from an app.

## Where is my email or other messages?

All of your email, text messages, social networking notifications, missed calls, and voice mail messages can be found in the BlackBerry Hub. The BlackBerry Hub isn't like other apps on your BlackBerry device. It's at the core of the BlackBerry 10 experience, and it's always running so that you stay connected no matter what you're doing on your device.

To get to the BlackBerry Hub, on the home screen, slide your finger right.

You can also peek at the BlackBerry Hub or open it from anywhere on your device. From the bottom of the screen, slide your finger up and to the right.

BlackBerry device showing a directional arrow starting from below the screen and moving in an arc toward the right side of the screen. Shows the gesture to view the BlackBerry Hub.

## Where are the phone keys and my notification profiles?

To answer a call, touch and hold the circle at the bottom of the screen and slide your finger to the left. Release your finger from the screen once the circle covers **The answer a call icon.**

Incoming call slider showing a directional arrow moving from the center of the slider to the answer call icon on the left side of the slider. Shows the answer call gesture.

To decline a call, touch and hold the circle at the bottom of the screen and slide your finger to the right. Release your finger from the screen once the circle covers **The decline a call icon**.

**Incoming call slider showing a directional arrow moving from the center of the slider to the decline a call icon on the right side of the slider. Shows the decline a call gesture.**

BlackBerry 10 OS includes the following built-in notification modes: Normal, Phone Calls Only, Vibrate Only, Silent, and All Alerts Off.

- You can quickly turn on silent mode by swiping down from the top of the home screen and tapping **Silent Mode**.
- You can set custom ring tones for contacts in the Contacts app.
- To set notifications for particular types of messages on the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen and tap **Image Settings > Notifications**.

## Where are my apps?

Some of the apps that you used on your old BlackBerry device might not be available on your BlackBerry 10 device. In the BlackBerry World storefront, you can check if your old apps are available for download on the **My World** screen or find new apps.

## How do I edit or move text?

There's no need for a trackpad or trackball on a BlackBerry 10 device! Just touch and hold your finger on text to show a menu with options to select, cut, copy, and paste text. You can move the cursor or insert text into a specific location using fine cursor control.

### Select text

Touch and hold a character or word.

- To cancel your selection, tap anywhere on the screen.
- To change your text selection, drag the handles.

**Text field showing highlighted text with text editing handles for changing text selection.**

### Move text

1. Touch and hold your finger on a word or in a text field.

2. Release your finger from the screen. A menu with text editing options appears.
3. Tap an option.

**Tip:** If you aren't sure what a menu icon means, touch and hold the icon to see what it does. Slide your finger off the icon to avoid selecting it.

Text editing menu showing cut, copy, select all, format selection, paste, and select icons.

## Insert the cursor

1. Tap a word or text field to show the cursor.
2. Do any of the following:
  - To move the cursor to another spot, drag the circle.
  - To move the cursor one character at a time, tap the top, bottom, left or right of the circle.
3. Insert text where you place the cursor.

**Tip:** Make sure that you place your finger on the outer part of the circle so that you can still see the cursor.

Shows the cursor inserted between characters

## Where are my tasks, memos, and voice notes?

- If you used BlackBerry Blend or BlackBerry Link to transfer the files from your old BlackBerry device to your new device, your tasks, memos, and voice notes should be in the new BlackBerry Remember app.
- If you previously used tasks in BBM Groups, you still have access to those tasks in BBM.

## Where do I find my files?

You can find your files in the File Manager app. If you added a work account to your BlackBerry device and your administrator turned on BlackBerry Balance technology, your device data, apps, and network access are divided into a work space and a personal space. The separate spaces help you to avoid accidentally copying work data into a personal app, or displaying confidential work data during a BBM video chat. To switch between your work space and personal space, drag your finger down on the middle of the home screen and tap **Personal** or **Work**.

# Where can I find my device info and passwords?

## Where can I find my PIN?

In BBM, tap your profile picture. On your profile page, your PIN appears under your barcode. In an email or text message, you can also type **mypin** to display your PIN.

## How do I find my own phone number?

On the home screen, tap the **Phone** icon. In the **calls** or **Contact** view, in the center of the screen, swipe down, and your phone number appears at the top of the screen. In an email or text message, you can also type **mynumber** to display your phone number.

## Where is Password Keeper?

The Password Keeper app is available for download in the BlackBerry World storefront. If you used BlackBerry Link or a media card to transfer your data from a BlackBerry device running BlackBerry Device Software 5.0 or later, you can restore your Password Keeper passwords from your old device after you download and open the Password Keeper app.

## Where can I find details about my device software version and hardware?

On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap **Settings > About**. To change the type of information displayed, tap an option in the drop-down list.

In a message, note, or task, you can type **myver** followed by a space, to see your device model and the BlackBerry 10 OS version it is running. This feature might not be supported by your input language.

# How do I search?

If you are looking for something on your BlackBerry device or the Internet, tap the Intelligent Assistant icon on the home screen.

# What is BlackBerry Link?

BlackBerry Link is the latest version of BlackBerry Desktop Software and can be used with your BlackBerry 10 device. You can use BlackBerry Desktop Software with devices that are running BlackBerry 7.1 and earlier.

BlackBerry Link is software that you can install on your computer to link data, media files, and applications on your BlackBerry device to your desktop computer.

To download BlackBerry Link, on your computer, visit [www.blackberry.com/BlackBerryLink](http://www.blackberry.com/BlackBerryLink) and select the Windows or Mac option.

## Notification icons

The notification icons show you that you have new or unread items for your accounts in the BlackBerry Hub. When you have a new item, the **New item** indicator appears on the notification icon. You can peek at your notification icons by sliding your finger up from the bottom of the screen from anywhere on the device.

Icon	Description
The email message icon	Email message
The text message icon	Text message
The BBM message icon	BBM message
The Facebook message icon	Facebook message
The Twitter message icon	Twitter message
The LinkedIn message icon	LinkedIn message
The phone call icon	Phone call
The voice mail message icon	Voice mail message
The notification message icon	Notification messages from apps and services such as BlackBerry World

## Menu icons

**Tip:** If you aren't sure what a menu icon means, touch and hold the icon to see what it does. Slide your finger off the icon to avoid selecting it.

Here's a description of the most common menu icons:

Icon	Description
The More actions icon	Open a menu of actions
The more tabs icon	Open a list of ways to navigate or filter information
The Compose icon	Compose a message
The Attachments icon	View attachments

Icon	Description
The Share icon	Share an item, such as a picture, with someone
The Reply icon	Reply to an email
The Reply All icon	Reply to all recipients of an email
The Forward icon	Forward an email
The Voice Note icon	Record a voice note
The New Entry icon	Add a new entry in the Remember app
The Add entry icon	Add a new entry in the Calendar app

## Setting up your device

To set up your BlackBerry device, you need a nano SIM card. Depending on your service provider and where you purchased your device, the SIM card might be inserted already.

If you don't have a SIM card or don't have the right type of SIM card, contact your service provider.

You can insert a media card (microSD card) if you need more storage for pictures, videos, music, and documents.

To set up your device and make it your own, open the Setup app. You can add your email, instant messaging, and social networking accounts, and customize your device settings.

## Insert the SIM card

Depending on your service provider and where you purchased your BlackBerry device, the SIM card might already be inserted.

1. With the back of your device facing you, use the indentation on the top of the device to pull the top part of the cover toward you.

BlackBerry device showing the notch to access the slot for the nano SIM card.

2. With the metal contacts facing away from you, insert the nano SIM card into the right slot as shown.

BlackBerry device showing where to insert the nano SIM card

## Insert a media card

1. With the back of your BlackBerry device facing you, use the indentation on the top of the device to pull the top part of the cover toward you.

BlackBerry device showing the notch to access the slot for the media card.

2. With the metal contacts facing away from you, insert the media card into the left slot.

BlackBerry device showing where to insert the media card.

## Set up your device using the Setup app

To set up your device and make it your own, you can use the Setup app to:

- Add your email, BBM, instant messaging, and social networking accounts
- Set up your payment options for purchases you make from the BlackBerry World storefront
- Learn how to transfer content from your old smartphone
- Customize your device settings

The Setup app needs a network connection, so make sure your device is connected to a mobile network or is within range of a Wi-Fi network.

The Setup app prompts you to enter an existing BlackBerry ID or create a new one. If you are not sure if you already have a BlackBerry ID, on your computer, visit [www.blackberry.com/blackberryid](http://www.blackberry.com/blackberryid).

You can open the Setup app by tapping the **Setup icon**  on the home screen.

## Inserting the micro SIM card and media card

Learn how to insert the micro SIM card and the optional media card (microSD card).

### Insert the micro SIM card

**CAUTION:** Your BlackBerry device is designed for use with a micro SIM card. To avoid possible damage to your device, do not insert a SIM card adapter into your device.

## Insert a media card

**Tip:** You can insert or remove a media card while your BlackBerry device is turned on. You don't need to turn off or restart your device.

A media card (microSD card) is optional. If a media card is included, it might already be inserted.

## Using gestures

Take a moment to check out how to navigate your BlackBerry device using these touch screen gestures.

### Move around the home screen

To become familiar with the home screen, try using the following gestures.

1. To get back to the home screen at any time, swipe up from the bottom of the screen.

BlackBerry device showing a directional arrow starting from below the bottom of the screen and moving upward. Shows the gesture to get back to the home screen.

2. To see your messages in the BlackBerry Hub, slide your finger from left to right.

BlackBerry device showing a directional arrow moving to the right. Shows the gesture to move between your apps and the BlackBerry Hub.

3. To see the apps that are open (if any), slide your finger from right to left. To see all your apps, continue sliding your finger from right to left.

BlackBerry device showing a directional arrow moving to the left. Shows the gesture to move between the BlackBerry Hub and your apps.

### Peek at the BlackBerry Hub

You can peek at or open the BlackBerry Hub from anywhere on your BlackBerry device.

From the bottom of the screen, slide your finger up and to the right.



BlackBerry device showing a directional arrow starting from below the screen and moving in an arc toward the right side of the screen. Shows the gesture to view the BlackBerry Hub.

**Tip:** Keep your finger on the screen while you peek at the BlackBerry Hub. To go back to what you were doing, slide your finger back down.

## Show the menus

You can find features, options, and help by exploring the menus.

Do any of the following:

- To see more actions that you can perform in an app, tap **The more actions icon** or **icon\_10\_3\_more\_actions\_no\_bkgrd\_test** or **The more tabs icon**.

BlackBerry device showing a tap on the More icon in the lower right corner of the screen. Shows the gesture to see more actions.

- To see more actions for a specific item, such as a song or picture, touch and hold the item.

**Tip:** To see the names of the icons that appear on the right side of the screen, touch and hold the icon. Slide your finger off the icon to avoid selecting it.

- To find the settings and help for an app, swipe down from the top of the screen.

BlackBerry device showing a directional arrow starting from above the top of the screen and moving downward. Shows the gesture to see the settings and help.

- To find the settings for the device, swipe down from the top of screen.

**Note:** In an app, use two fingers and swipe down from the top of the screen.

BlackBerry device showing two directional arrows starting from above the top of the screen and moving downward. Shows the gesture to see the settings for the device from an app.

## Scroll and move between items

Slide your finger to scroll through a list, pan a webpage, or move between pictures.

Do any of the following:

- To scroll, slide your finger up and down.

BlackBerry device showing a directional arrow moving upward. Shows the gesture to scroll.

- To move between the BlackBerry Hub and your apps, slide your finger left and right.

BlackBerry device showing a directional arrow moving to the left. Shows the gesture to move between the BlackBerry Hub and your apps.

## Use a slider:

If a slider appears on your screen, you can use the slider to progress through a file, such as a song or video, or scroll through multiple pages, such as the pages of an eBook.

On the slider, drag the slider handle.

BlackBerry device showing a directional arrow moving to the right. Shows the gesture to progress through a file.

## Select items

Do any of the following:

- To select an item, simply tap it. If the item can be opened it will open.
- To highlight an item without opening it, touch and hold the item.
- To highlight multiple items, such as pictures or songs that you want to share, touch and hold one item. Tap **The select more icon** and tap additional items. To clear an item, tap it again.

BlackBerry device showing a tap on an item. Shows the gesture to select an item.

## Zoom in to or zoom out from the screen

If you want to see an image in more detail, or if you're having trouble reading words that are too small, you can magnify the screen by zooming in. To see more of the screen, zoom out.

Do any of the following:

- To zoom in, slide your fingers apart.

BlackBerry device showing two directional arrows moving apart from each other. Shows the gesture to zoom in.

- To zoom out, slide your fingers together.

BlackBerry device showing two directional arrows moving towards each other. Shows the gesture to zoom out.

## Advanced interactions

### Move items from one place to another

1. On the home screen, touch and hold the app you want to move.
2. When the app starts to pulsate, slide your finger to where you want the app to be.

BlackBerry device showing a directional arrow moving diagonally across the screen. Shows the gesture to move an app on the home screen.

### Minimize apps and show your Active Frames

When you minimize an app it appears as an Active Frame on the home screen. This is great for multitasking as you don't need to do things like save and close documents before you use the browser, or restart your browser session after you check your email.

Swipe up from the bottom of the screen.

BlackBerry device showing a directional arrow starting from below the bottom of the screen and moving upward. Shows the gesture to minimize an app.

**Tip:** When you're done using your app, you can close it by tapping **The close icon** in the lower-right corner of the app.

## Personalizing your device

Learn how to personalize your device and make it uniquely yours. For example, you can change settings, download apps, change your ring tone, and set a picture for your wallpaper.

### Related information

Customize your device settings, 97  
Customize your Quick Settings, 97  
Download and buy apps, games, music, and videos, 167  
Downloading and installing Android apps on your BlackBerry device, 189  
Move an app icon around the home screen, 163  
Change your notifications or ring tones, 38  
Change your font size, 147  
Set a picture as your wallpaper, 147  
Set an alarm, 181  
Bookmark a favorite webpage, 190  
Add a signature to an email account, 69

## Find customer support

To get support for your BlackBerry device, see the following resources:

- [blackberry.com/support](http://blackberry.com/support): Find self-help resources, such as manuals, knowledge base articles, and videos. Find answers or post questions on community forums. Share tips on social networks and BlackBerry blogs.
- [blackberry.com/contact](http://blackberry.com/contact): Find information about who to call with questions about warranties, repairs, billing, or technical support.

## Device Switch

Using your BlackBerry device, you can switch from one device to another and transfer your contacts, calendar entries, pictures, videos, notes, memos, and more.

### Before you switch devices

For information about how to switch to a BlackBerry device from an older BlackBerry device or a third-party device, visit [www.blackberry.com/deviceswitch](http://www.blackberry.com/deviceswitch).

### Learn what transfer options are available to you

The types of data transferred depends on the transfer method you use and the type of smartphone you're transferring data from. Data transferred might include some settings, phone history, pictures, music, browser bookmarks, and so on. For a list of the type of data that is transferred, visit [www.blackberry.com/deviceswitch](http://www.blackberry.com/deviceswitch).

- Switching from BlackBerry Device Software 5.0 or later? On a computer, you can use BlackBerry Link to switch devices.
- Switching from BlackBerry 7.0 or BlackBerry 7.1? You can use a media card on your device to switch devices.

- Switching from a BlackBerry device that has BlackBerry Protect installed? You can use BlackBerry Protect to transfer supported data, such as contacts, from your current device's backup file to your new device.
- Switching from an iPhone or Android device? You can download the device switch app from BlackBerry World.

**Tip:** If you're switching from a BlackBerry device, to see what version of software you're currently running, on the home screen of your old device, do one of the following:

- Click **Options > About**
- Click **Options > Device > About Device Versions**.

## Make note of your usernames and passwords

Before you switch BlackBerry devices, make sure that you have the following:

- If you have saved usernames and passwords in Password Keeper, consider temporarily writing this information down so that you have it when you're ready to add accounts to your new device.
- If you have a device running BlackBerry Device Software 6.0 or later, you might have created a BlackBerry ID that you used to log in to your device and the BlackBerry World storefront. If you log in to your BlackBerry 10 device with your BlackBerry ID, you might be able to reinstall apps that you downloaded previously from BlackBerry App World and access BlackBerry products that use your BlackBerry ID, such as BBM and BlackBerry Protect.

**Note:** BlackBerry App World is called BlackBerry World on BlackBerry 10 devices.

### Related information

[How do I reset my lost or forgotten BlackBerry ID password?,28](#)

## Update BBM

Although it's not required to switch BlackBerry devices, you should update to the latest available version of BBM and associate BBM with your BlackBerry ID before you switch devices.

1. To see which version of BBM you're running on your old device, look for **BlackBerry Messenger** in your list of installed applications.
2. To download BBM 7.0 or later on your old device, visit the BlackBerry World storefront or [www.bbm.com](http://www.bbm.com).

If you can't update your version of BBM, in BBM, press the **The Messenger** key > **Options > Back Up**. Select a backup option.

## What if I have contacts on my SIM card?

Your BlackBerry 10 device uses a micro SIM card. To get a micro SIM card for your device, contact your service provider.

If you saved contacts to your old SIM card, to make sure that those contacts aren't lost, you might need to copy those contacts to your old device before you back up your device data.

**Tip:** To copy contacts from your SIM card to your old device's built-in media storage, in your contact list on your old device, press the **Menu** key > **SIM Phone Book**. Press the **Menu** key > **Copy All To Contacts**.

## Transfer data to a new device using a computer and BlackBerry Link

If your current BlackBerry device is running BlackBerry Device Software 5.0 or later, you can use BlackBerry Link to transfer supported data and settings such as device settings, phone history, media files, browser bookmarks, and so on to your new BlackBerry 10 device. This feature is designed to move personal data but not work data.

1. On your computer, download and install BlackBerry Link from [www.blackberry.com/BlackBerryLink](http://www.blackberry.com/BlackBerryLink).
2. Open BlackBerry Link.
3. Connect your current BlackBerry device to your computer using a USB cable.
4. Complete the instructions on the screen.
5. When prompted, connect your new BlackBerry 10 device using a USB cable.
6. Complete the instructions on the screen.

**Note:** Email accounts and unsupported applications aren't transferred to your new device. You can set up your email accounts on your new device in the BlackBerry Hub. To download applications that weren't transferred to your new device, visit the BlackBerry World storefront.

## Transfer data from a BlackBerry 7 device using a media card

This transfer option is only available if you're switching from a BlackBerry 7 device or later. To see what version of software you're running, on your previous device's home screen, click **Options > About**, or click **Options > Device > About Device Versions**.

When you switch to a new BlackBerry device using the Device Switch feature in the Setup application, you can move alarm settings, BBM contacts, browser bookmarks, text messages, phone history, and wireless connection profiles between BlackBerry devices. This feature is designed to move personal data but not work data.

1. On your BlackBerry 7 device, click **Setup > Device Switch**.
2. Click **Using a Media Card > Save Data**.
3. Complete the instructions on the screen.
4. When the backup is complete, remove the media card from your BlackBerry 7 device and insert it into your BlackBerry 10 device.
5. On your BlackBerry 10 device, on the home screen, tap **Setup > Device Switch**.
6. Complete the instructions on the screen.

**Note:** Email accounts and unsupported applications aren't transferred to your new device. You can set up your email accounts on your new device in the BlackBerry Hub. To download applications that weren't transferred to your new device, visit the BlackBerry World storefront.

## Transfer data to a new device using BlackBerry Protect

To use this feature, the BlackBerry Protect app must be installed on your previous BlackBerry device. Your previous device must be running BlackBerry 7.1 or earlier.

You can use BlackBerry Protect to move supported data from your previous device to your new BlackBerry 10 device.

1. On your previous device or using the BlackBerry Protect website, back up your data.
2. On your new device, swipe down from the top of the home screen. Tap **Settings > BlackBerry Protect**.
3. If necessary, set the **BlackBerry Protect** switch to **On**. Complete the setup process.
4. Tap **Restore**. Select your previous device as the device that you want to restore data from.
5. Tap **Restore**.

## Transfer data from an iPhone or Android device

You must be connected to a Wi-Fi network on both your old device and on your BlackBerry device.

You can use the device switch app to transfer contacts, pictures, and other personal data from your iPhone or Android device to your new BlackBerry device. For more information about the device switch app, visit [www.blackberry.com/deviceswitchapp](http://www.blackberry.com/deviceswitchapp).

1. On your BlackBerry 10 device, visit [www.blackberry.com/deviceswitchapp](http://www.blackberry.com/deviceswitchapp) and download the device switch app.
2. Open the device switch app.
3. Complete the instructions on the screen.

## Tutorial: Switching to a BlackBerry 10 device using a media card

This tutorial provides you with the opportunity to see and then practice switching from a BlackBerry 7 device to a BlackBerry 10 device using a media card.

**Note:** This tutorial is available in English only.

[Start the tutorial](#)

<http://docs.blackberry.com/switchingdevices/help/en>

## After you switch devices

For information about returning your previous device to BlackBerry for recycling and safe disposal, visit [www.blackberry.com/recycling](http://www.blackberry.com/recycling). The recycling and trade-up program is only available in certain areas.

### Restoring BBM

The first time that you open BBM, you are prompted for your BlackBerry ID. If you have used BBM before, consider the following:

- If you are switching BlackBerry devices, you can use the Device Switch feature in BlackBerry Link on your computer or on a device running BlackBerry 7 or later to transfer your device data, including your contacts and groups from BBM 6.2 or earlier, to a new device.
- If you previously associated BBM with your BlackBerry ID (for example, on your current device), you can sign in with the same BlackBerry ID to restore your BBM data over the wireless network.

Your BBM data, such as your contacts, are automatically backed up over the wireless network based on your BlackBerry ID. It's still a good idea to regularly save a backup file for your device on a computer using BlackBerry Link in case your device is lost, stolen, or corrupted.

### Tips after switching devices

After you have finished switching BlackBerry devices, consider doing the following:

- If you have a media card, move it from your old device to your new device.
- To receive all of your messages and updates, and email and social networking accounts to your new device.
- Wipe your old device to delete all of your data. To delete all of your device data, if necessary, set a device password and then enter the password incorrectly ten times.
- Download apps from the BlackBerry World storefront.
- Explore the Help app on your device and discover tips and tricks.

## Troubleshooting: Device Switch

### I can't switch my SIM card to my new BlackBerry 10 device

The BlackBerry 10 device uses a micro SIM card. To get a micro SIM card for your new device, contact your service provider.



## Some of the data from my previous device isn't on my new device

The type of device you transferred data from and the version of device software on your previous device determines what data can be transferred to your new device. For a list of the type of data that is transferred, visit [www.blackberry.com/deviceswitch](http://www.blackberry.com/deviceswitch).

Try any of the following:

- Check that your personal email accounts have been set up. Email accounts aren't transferred and need to be set up in the BlackBerry Hub on the device.
- Check that your work email accounts have been set up. For a Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync email account on a BlackBerry Enterprise Server, contact your administrator for the information required to activate the account.
- Look for memos and tasks in the BlackBerry Remember app.
- Transfer apps by downloading them from the BlackBerry World storefront.

## I can't transfer items using my media card

Try any of the following:

- Back up items from your media card to another source, such as your BlackBerry device built-in media storage or your desktop computer. Format your media card or purchase a new media card. Save the items that you backed up to the media card and then try transferring the items again.
- Use BlackBerry Link to transfer your info from one device to another. To download BlackBerry Link, on your computer, visit [www.blackberry.com/BlackBerryLink](http://www.blackberry.com/BlackBerryLink) and select the Windows or Mac option.

## Troubleshooting wizard: I'm having trouble switching to my BlackBerry 10 device

The troubleshooting wizard guides you through a series of questions and tasks that are intended to help you solve your device switch issue.

[Start the troubleshooting wizard](#)

<http://docs.blackberry.com/troubleshootingwizard/en>

**Note:** This troubleshooting wizard is available in English only.

## BlackBerry ID

A BlackBerry ID gives you convenient access to multiple BlackBerry products and services. After you create a BlackBerry ID, you can use your email address and password to log in to any BlackBerry product that supports BlackBerry ID. With

BlackBerry ID, you can manage apps that you downloaded from the BlackBerry World storefront and download the apps when you switch devices. You should sign in with the same BlackBerry ID on all of your BlackBerry devices.

If you previously created a BlackBerry ID, you must use it when you set up your new device instead of creating a new BlackBerry ID. You can log in to both a tablet and smartphone using the same BlackBerry ID.

## Set up a new BlackBerry ID

**Tip:** It's important to choose a password that you can remember. For your BlackBerry ID username, be sure to use an email address that you use frequently. Recovery details can be sent to the email address that you use as your BlackBerry ID username if you forget your BlackBerry ID password. The email address that you use as a BlackBerry ID username doesn't have to be associated with your BlackBerry device.

1. To create a new BlackBerry ID when you set up your BlackBerry device, on the **BlackBerry ID** screen, tap **Create New**.
2. Complete the instructions on the screen.

## Change your BlackBerry ID password

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > BlackBerry ID**.
3. Tap **Change Password**.

## Change your BlackBerry ID information

You can change your username, screen name, first name, or last name.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > BlackBerry ID**.
3. Tap **Edit**.

## Tutorial: Creating a BlackBerry ID on a BlackBerry 10 device

This tutorial provides you with the opportunity to see and then practice creating a BlackBerry ID on a BlackBerry 10 device.

**Note:** This tutorial is available in English only.

[Start the tutorial](#)

<http://docs.blackberry.com/tutorials/blackberryID/en>

# Tutorial: Signing in with a BlackBerry ID on a BlackBerry 10 device

This tutorial provides you with the opportunity to see and then practice signing in with a BlackBerry ID on a BlackBerry 10 device.

**Note:** This tutorial is available in English only.

[Start the tutorial](#)

[http://docs.blackberry.com/tutorials/obid\\_signin/en](http://docs.blackberry.com/tutorials/obid_signin/en)

## Using your BlackBerry ID to switch devices

### Using your BlackBerry ID on a new device

When you switch to a new BlackBerry device, during setup, you will be prompted to enter your BlackBerry ID username and password. It's important to use the same BlackBerry ID that you used on your previous device, since many of your apps and settings are associated with your BlackBerry ID.

For instance, when you use your existing BlackBerry ID on your new device, you can reinstall apps that you downloaded on your previous device from the BlackBerry World storefront, if a version of that app exists for your new device.

### Find your BlackBerry ID on your old device

If you have previously created a BlackBerry ID and are switching to a new BlackBerry device, it's important to sign in using your existing BlackBerry ID, as many of your apps and settings are associated with it.

1. On the home screen of your old device, click **Options**.
2. Depending on your device, do one of the following:
  - Click **Third Party Applications > BlackBerry ID**.
  - Click **Device > BlackBerry ID**.
  - Click **BlackBerry ID**.

## Can I sign out of BlackBerry ID and sign in with a different BlackBerry ID?

You can only sign in with one BlackBerry ID on your BlackBerry device. If you want to sign out and then sign in with a different BlackBerry ID, you must delete all of the data from your device.

## Why do I need to re-enter my BlackBerry ID password?

After a certain amount of time, if you aren't actively using the app or service that supports BlackBerry ID, you might be prompted to re-enter your password. For example, you might be prompted to re-enter your BlackBerry ID password before you download apps from the BlackBerry World storefront.

You might also be required to re-enter your BlackBerry ID if you change any of your BlackBerry ID information, delete all of the data on your BlackBerry device, or update the software on your device.

## What is the difference between my BlackBerry ID username and screen name?

Your BlackBerry ID username is the email address that you use when you log in using your BlackBerry ID. The BlackBerry ID screen name is the name that appears when you submit app reviews in the BlackBerry World storefront.

## How do I reset my lost or forgotten BlackBerry ID password?

You can have the instructions about resetting your BlackBerry ID password sent to the email address that you use as your BlackBerry ID username. For security reasons, your BlackBerry ID password can't be reset for you.

Do one of the following:

- To reset your password on a computer, visit [www.blackberry.com/blackberryid](http://www.blackberry.com/blackberryid), click **Reset your password**. Complete the instructions on the screen.
- To reset your password on your BlackBerry device, when you are prompted to sign in with your BlackBerry ID, click **Forgot Password**. Answer your security question and complete the instructions on the screen.

Once you have completed the steps above, you will receive a password reset email. If you complete the steps to reset your password on a computer, the password reset email can only be viewed on a computer and isn't delivered to your device. If you follow the steps to reset your password on your device, the password reset email will be delivered to your device. Complete the instructions in the email to reset your BlackBerry ID password.

## Troubleshooting wizard: I need help with my BlackBerry ID

The troubleshooting wizard guides you through a series of questions and tasks that are intended to help you solve your BlackBerry ID issue.

[Start the troubleshooting wizard](#)

<http://docs.blackberry.com/troubleshootingwizard/en>

**Note:** This troubleshooting wizard is available in English only.

# Phone and voice

## Phone basics

While on a call, you can switch between the speakerphone, headset, and handset; mute a call; or start a conference call by making another call. You can also open the dial pad, make notes while on a call, and move a call to BBM Video.

### Make a call

1. In the Phone app, tap **The Dial pad icon**.
2. Dial a number.
3. Tap **Call**.

**Tip:** To make a call on the home screen, type a contact name or phone number. Tap **Call <name>** or **Call <number>**.

### Call a recent number or speed dial contact

In the Phone app, tap **The Calls icon**.

**Tip:** To choose the phone line or app you want to use when you call a recent number, touch and hold a recent number. Tap **The Call Using icon**.

### Call someone from your contact list

1. In the Phone app, tap **The Contacts icon**.
2. Tap a contact.
3. If you have multiple phone numbers for a contact, tap the number that you want to call. For example, tap **Call Home** or **Call Mobile**.

### Answer or decline a call

Do one of the following:

- To answer a call, touch and hold the circle at the bottom of the screen and slide your finger to the left. Release your finger when the circle covers **The answer icon**.
- To decline a call, touch and hold the circle at the bottom of the screen and slide your finger to the right. Release your finger when the circle covers **The reject icon**.

## Use Reply Now to send a message to a caller

You will never have to excuse yourself from a meeting or conversation to answer the phone again. With the Reply Now feature, you can send a caller a brief message instead of answering an incoming call. By default, if the caller is a BBM contact, the Reply Now message is sent as a BBM message. If the caller isn't a BBM contact, the Reply Now message is sent as a text message. Depending on the recipient of the Reply Now message, additional text messaging charges might apply.

1. When you receive an incoming call, tap **The Reply Now text icon** or **The Reply Now BBM icon**.
2. Do any of the following:
  - To send one of the default Reply Now messages, tap a message.
  - To compose a new message, tap **Custom message**. Type a message and tap **Send**.

## Silence the ring tone when you receive a call

If you receive a call while your sound notifications are turned on, you can quickly silence your ring tone. When you silence the ring tone, you still need to answer or decline the call.

When you receive an incoming call, tap **The silence ring tone icon**.

## Put a call on hold

While on a call, press and hold **Mute** until **Call Hold** appears on the screen.

## Take notes during a call

While on a call, you can take notes that are saved as entries in BlackBerry Remember.

**Tip:** You can turn on the speakerphone before taking notes, so that your hands are free to use the keyboard.

1. While on a call, tap **Call Note**.
2. Type your notes and include information such as a title, due date, and tags.
3. Tap **Save**.

## Start a conference call

1. While on a call, make or answer another call.
2. To merge the calls, tap **Merge**.

## Answer a second call while already on a call

1. If you're using the call waiting feature, when you receive a call while already on a call, you can do one of the following:
  - To put the first call on hold and answer the second call, tap **Answer**.
  - To end the first call and answer the second call, touch and hold **Answer**. Tap **Drop**.
2. To merge both calls and start a conference call, tap **Merge**.

To add more people to the conference call, repeat steps 1 and 2.

## Make another call while already on a call

When you make another call while you're already on a call, your first call is automatically put on hold.

1. While on a call, tap **Add Call**.
2. Do any of the following:
  - Tap a phone number, name, or speed dial contact.
  - Tap **Contacts**. Tap a contact.
  - Tap **Dialpad**. Dial a number.
3. To merge both calls and start a conference call, tap **Merge**.

To add more people to the conference call, repeat steps 1 to 3.

## Remove people from a conference call

1. While in a conference call, to view the conference call participants, tap **List**.
2. Do one of the following:
  - To remove a person from the conference call and hang up, tap **End Call**.
  - To remove a person from the conference call and keep them in a separate call, tap **Split**.

## Answering calls automatically

You can set up your BlackBerry device to automatically answer calls when you have a headset connected or when you remove your device from a case or holster.

## Automatically answer or end a call using a case or holster

1. In the Phone app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** > **Holster**.



3. Do any of the following:
  - Set the **Answer a Call by Removing Device From Holster** switch to **On**.
  - Set the **End Call by Putting Device Back in Holster** switch to **On**.

## Automatically answer a call when a headset is connected

1. In the Phone app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** > **Bluetooth**.
3. Set the **Automatically Answer a Call When Connected to a Headset** switch to **On**.

When you turn on this feature and you have a headset connected to your BlackBerry device, your calls will automatically be answered after 5 seconds.

## Move a call from your headset to your device

When you have a headset connected to your BlackBerry device, incoming calls are automatically received on your headset. You can manually move the call back to the device.

To manually move the call back to your device, while on a call, tap **Speaker** > **Handset**.

To move a call back to the headset, tap **Speaker**. Tap the name of your headset.

## Move a call to BBM Video

See who you're talking to by moving a call to BBM Video. To move a phone call to BBM video, the person you're talking to must have access to BBM Video as well. If you try to start a BBM Video chat with someone who isn't a BBM contact, you will be asked to add the person to BBM before you start your BBM Video chat.

While on a call, tap **BBM Video**.

## Add a contact or number to your speed dial list

There are two different speed dial lists that you can add contacts or numbers to. You can also add contacts or numbers to the keyboard speed dial list, so that you can dial a number by pressing and holding a single key on your keyboard. By default, your voicemail access number is included in your speed dial list.

1. In the Phone app, tap **The Calls icon** or **The Contacts icon**.
2. Touch and hold a contact or phone number.
3. Tap **The Add to Speed Dial icon**.

## Add a contact to your keyboard speed dial list

1. In the Phone app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **The Settings icon** > **Keypress Speed Dial**.
3. Press the key on your keyboard that you want to associate with the contact.
4. Tap the contact that you want to associate with the key on your keyboard.

To call a contact from your keyboard speed dial list, on the home screen, press and hold the key that you associated with the contact.

## Delete a contact or number from your speed dial list

1. In the Phone app, tap **The Calls icon**.
2. In your speed dial list, touch and hold a contact or number.
3. Tap **The Delete icon**.

## Delete a contact from your keyboard speed dial list

1. In the Phone app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **The Settings icon** > **Keypress Speed Dial**.
3. Touch and hold a contact or number.
4. Tap **The Delete icon**.

## Block calls

When you block calls, you can block all incoming or all outgoing calls, and all incoming or all outgoing calls when roaming. Contact your wireless service provider for more info on blocking specific phone numbers. Depending on your wireless service provider, this feature might not be supported.

1. In the Phone app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** > **Call Blocking**.
3. Set any of the switches to **On**.

The first time that you turn on call blocking, you will be prompted to create a password to lock your call blocking settings. To change your call blocking password, complete steps 1 and 2, and tap **Change Password**.

## Turn on or turn off call waiting

Depending on your wireless service provider, this feature might not be supported.

1. In the Phone app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** > **Call Waiting**.
3. Tap the **Call Waiting** switch.

## Set up call forwarding

Depending on your wireless service provider, this feature might not be available.

1. In the Phone app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** > **Call Forwarding**.
3. Set any of the switches to **On**.
4. To change the number that your calls are forwarded to, tap the drop-down list under a switch and type a number.

## Turn on Priority Calling

If you have multiple phone lines, you can make calls with the phone line you want using the Priority Calling feature. With Priority Calling, you can assign a phone line or app to use when you make calls.

1. In the Phone app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **the Settings icon** > **Priority Calling**.
3. Set the **Use Priority Calling** switch to **On**.

To choose your phone line when you make a call, on the Calls screen, tap the **Select Line** drop-down list. To use a specific phone line, tap a phone line. To automatically use your mobile line when you're connected to a mobile network, tap **Use the Priority Line**.

## Change your default Reply Now messages

You can select one of the three default Reply Now messages to send to a caller instead of answering an incoming call. You can change the default messages or compose a new Reply Now message.

1. In the Phone app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **The Settings icon** > **Reply Now**.
3. Tap the message you want to change.
4. Type a new Reply Now message.

To prevent the Reply Now icon from appearing when you receive an incoming call, set the **Reply Now** switch to **Off**.

## Show or hide your number on outgoing calls

Depending on your wireless service provider, this feature might not be supported.

1. In the Phone app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** > **Show My Number**.
3. Set the **Allow My Number to Appear When Calling** switch to **On**.

## Adjust the bass and treble of your calls

1. In the Phone app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** > **Call Audio**.

## Set a default area code or country code

You can use smart dialing to set a default area code and country code that is applied automatically to the phone numbers that you call, so that you don't have to dial the country code or area code when you make a call within your own country or area code.

1. In the Phone app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** > **Smart Dialing**.
  - To change the default country code, tap **Country Code**. Tap a country.
  - To change the default area code, in the **Area Code** field, type an area code.

Tap any of the drop-down lists to change other smart dialing options.

## Limit the phone numbers that you can call

When you set up and use fixed dialing numbers, you can only make calls and send text messages to the phone numbers that you added to the fixed dialing numbers list. For example, if you give your BlackBerry device to your child to use, you can limit the phone numbers that your child can call. To use fixed dialing numbers, your service provider must set up your micro SIM card for this feature. Depending on your wireless service provider, this feature might not be supported.

1. In the Phone app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** > **Fixed Dialing Numbers**.
3. Set the **Fixed Dialing Numbers** switch to **On**.
4. Enter the SIM security code provided to you by your service provider.

5. Tap **OK**.
6. Tap **Edit List**.
7. Type a name and phone number.

## View your call summary

If you're concerned about your wireless voice usage, you can monitor the time you have spent on the phone on the Call Summary screen.

1. In the Phone app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings > Call Summary**.

To reset the call times on your Call Summary screen, tap **Clear call summary**.

## Find your own phone number

1. In the Phone app, tap **the Call icon**.
2. Anywhere on the screen, touch and slide your finger down. Your phone number appears at the top of the screen.

**Tip:** To include your own phone number in a message to someone, in an email, a BBM message, or a text message, type **mynumber** followed by the space bar.

## Turn on Wi-Fi Calling

No mobile coverage? No problem! You can make and receive calls, and send and receive text messages over a Wi-Fi network with Wi-Fi Calling. Depending on your wireless service plan, this feature might not be supported.

In the Wi-Fi Calling app, set the **Wi-Fi Calling** switch to **On**.

**Note:** If you move out of range of a Wi-Fi network while you're on a call, your call might be dropped.

## Change your Wi-Fi Calling network preferences

Depending on your wireless service provider and wireless network, this feature might not be supported.

In the Wi-Fi Calling app, you can choose your network preference for making and receiving calls, and sending and receiving text messages. To set your network preference, do any of the following:

- To use a Wi-Fi network only, tap **Wi-Fi Only**.
- To use a Wi-Fi network when you're connected to both a Wi-Fi network and mobile network, tap **Wi-Fi Preferred**.
- To use a mobile network when you're connected to both a Wi-Fi network and mobile network, tap **Cellular Preferred**.

## Troubleshooting: Phone

### I can't put a call on hold to answer an incoming call

While on a call, if you answer an incoming call from a different app, your first call might be disconnected instead of being put on hold. For example, while on a phone call, if you answer an incoming BBM Voice call, your current phone call ends.

A message appears on your device to notify you that answering another call will end your current call.

## Notifications and ring tones

You can personalize your BlackBerry device by customizing your notifications and ring tones. You can also turn off all notifications or set your notifications to vibrate. The Instant Previews and Lock Screen Notifications features allow you to stay up-to-date and manage your inbox without having to leave the app that you're in when you receive your messages.

### About notifications and ring tones

The global notification settings on your BlackBerry device work like a master switch that either turns on or turns off the customized notifications that are currently set for apps or contacts. Customized contact notifications override customized app notifications. For example, if sound is turned off for the Phone app but is turned on in a customized notification for a contact, the phone still rings when the contact calls you.

If you want to customize how you receive priority messages in your BlackBerry Priority Hub, you can create a rule so that messages sent from specific accounts, with a specific subject, or with other criteria are sent to your BlackBerry Priority Hub. You can also turn on a Level 1 alert for specific messages so that you receive a custom notification for these messages.

**Note:** Level 1 alerts override existing notification settings

### Change your notifications or ring tones

In the Notifications settings, you can change the settings for your sounds, notifications, and ring tones. You can also set the volume level of the notifications, number of vibrations, and more

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Notifications**.
3. To change your global notification settings, tap a setting in the **Mode** drop-down list or change the **Sound, Vibrate, LED, Instant Previews**, or **Volume** settings.

## Turn off all sounds and ring tones except for calls

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Notifications**.
3. In the **Mode** drop-down list, tap **Phone Calls Only**.

**Tip:** To turn on the ring tone for calls while your BlackBerry device is in bedside mode, in the Clock app, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap **The Clock Settings icon**. Set the **Phone Calls in Bedside Mode** switch to **On**.

## Customize notifications for a contact

Notifications that you customize for contacts override notifications that you set for specific apps. For example, if sound is turned on for phone notifications for a contact but the sound is turned off for the phone, the phone still rings when the contact calls you.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Notifications**.
3. At the bottom of the **Notifications** screen, tap **Contacts**.
4. Tap **The customize for contact icon**.
5. Tap a contact.
6. Do any of the following:
  - Tap **Phone Calls**.
  - Tap **Email Messages**.
  - Tap **BBM**.
  - Tap **Text Messages**.
  - Tap **Other Messaging**, which includes apps like Facebook, Twitter, LinkedIn, and more.
7. Change the **Tone**, **Vibrate**, **LED**, or **Instant Preview** settings.
8. Tap **The Back icon** until the **Contacts Notifications** screen appears.

Contacts that you set customized notifications for are listed on the **Contacts Notifications** screen.

## Customize notifications for an app

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Notifications**.
3. At the bottom of the **Notifications** screen, tap **Applications**.
4. Tap an application.

5. Change the **Sound, Tone, Vibrate, LED, or Instant Previews** settings.
6. Tap **The Back icon** until the **Notifications** screen appears.

## Turn off all notifications and ring tones

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image- Settings > Notifications**.
3. In the **Mode** drop-down list, tap **All Alerts Off**.

## Change the notification settings for Level 1 alerts

To change the notification settings for Level 1 alerts, you need to first create a rule in the BlackBerry Priority Hub settings and select the **Enable Level 1 Alert** checkbox on the **Add Rule** screen.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image- Settings > Notifications > Level 1 Alert**.
3. Change the **Sound, Tone, Vibrate, LED, or Instant Previews** settings.

## View and respond to Instant Previews

You can use the Instant Previews feature to view previews of incoming email messages, BBM messages, text messages, and more from any application on your BlackBerry device.

When a preview appears at the top of the screen, do one of the following:

- To view the message in the BlackBerry Hub, tap the preview.
- To dismiss the preview, tap **The dismiss icon**.
- To ignore the preview, wait a few seconds until it disappears.
- To reply to a BBM message or text message without leaving the app that you're currently in, tap **The reply icon**.

## Turn off Instant Previews

By default, the Instant Previews feature is turned on.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image- Settings > Notifications**.
3. Set the **Instant Previews** switch to **Off**.

**Tip:** For some apps, you can change your notification settings to only display the priority messages in an app as Instant Previews. On the Notifications settings screen, tap an application. In the **Instant Previews** drop-down list, tap **Priority Only**.



## Respond directly to Instant Previews

You can use the Instant Previews feature to reply to your BBM and text messages without leaving the app that you're currently in.

While you're responding to a preview, incoming messages outside of the current conversation aren't displayed as Instant Previews notifications.

1. To respond to Instant Previews, tap **Reply**.
2. Press any key on the keyboard. To show the keyboard on a BlackBerry device with a touch screen keyboard, swipe up from the bottom of the screen with two fingers.
3. Type your message.
4. Tap **Send** or press **The Enter key**.

## About Lock Screen Notifications

You can use the Lock Screen Notifications feature to view the first few lines of your most recent email messages, BBM messages, text messages, and more on your BlackBerry device without having to unlock it.

### Turn off Lock Screen Notifications

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Security and Privacy > Lock Screen**.
3. Set the **Lock Screen Notifications** switch to **Off**.

### View Lock Screen Notifications

1. To unlock your BlackBerry device, swipe up from the bottom of the screen to the middle of the screen.
2. To view the Lock Screen Notifications, tap the notification icon.

**Tip:** To collapse the Lock Screen Notifications view so that only the notification icons are visible, swipe left or tap an icon.

## Troubleshooting: Notifications and ring tones

If the notifications and ring tones on your BlackBerry device aren't functioning in the way that you expect them to, consult the following troubleshooting topics.

## My device doesn't ring or vibrate when I receive a call or message

Try the following actions:

- On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. Verify that Silent Mode isn't turned on.
- If you created a custom alert for a contact, in the Contacts app, tap a contact. Verify that the **Volume** setting isn't set to **Silent** and that the **Vibration** setting isn't set to **Off**.

## My device doesn't display Instant Previews

If BlackBerry Balance is set up on your BlackBerry device, messages sent to accounts that are associated with your work space won't be displayed as Instant Previews.

## My device doesn't display Lock Screen notifications

If BlackBerry Balance is set up on your BlackBerry device, messages sent to accounts that are associated with your work space won't be displayed as Lock Screen Notifications when your work space is locked.

# Voicemail

Depending on your service provider, there are two different types of voicemail available on your BlackBerry device: standard voicemail and a visual voicemail service.

With standard voicemail, you can set up your voicemail access number and password so you can quickly call in to your voicemail service from the Calls screen in the Phone app.

If you subscribe to a visual voicemail service, you can view a list of your voicemail messages, play your voicemail messages, and change various voicemail settings from your BlackBerry device, without having to call in to your voicemail service. Depending on the features your service provider supports, your voicemail messages can be automatically downloaded to your device and you can pause, fast-forward, or rewind the voicemail message as you listen to it. You can also forward a voicemail message, send a reply to the person who left you a voicemail message, or delete a voicemail message from within the Phone app or the BlackBerry Hub.

Your service provider might automatically delete messages after a certain period of time. If you don't want a message to get automatically deleted, you can save it to your device.

Depending on your country or region, a visual voicemail service might not be available. You need to subscribe to a visual voicemail service to access the features. Contact your service provider to subscribe.

## Set up your voicemail

Depending on your wireless service provider, this feature might not be supported.

1. In the Phone app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** > **Voice mail**.
3. Type your voicemail access number and password.

After you have set up your voicemail, you can call your voice mail service from the Calls screen in the Phone app.

## Using a visual voicemail service

### Listen to a visual voicemail message

1. In the BlackBerry Hub or Phone app, tap a voicemail message.
2. Tap **Play**.

### Forward a visual voicemail message

1. In the BlackBerry Hub or Phone app, touch and hold a voicemail message.
2. Tap **the Share icon**.

### Save a visual voicemail message

Your service provider's voicemail system might automatically delete messages after a certain period of time. If you don't want a message to get automatically deleted, you can save it to your device.

1. In the BlackBerry Hub, or the Phone app, touch and hold a voicemail message.
2. Tap **Save**.

### Change your visual voicemail greeting

Your voicemail greeting is the outgoing message that a caller hears before leaving a voicemail message. Depending on your wireless service provider, this feature might not be supported.

1. In the Phone app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings**.
3. Tap **the Voice Mail icon** > **Change Voicemail Greeting**.
4. In the **Greeting** drop-down list, do one of the following:
  - To play your phone number as your voicemail greeting, tap **Phone Number**.
  - To play your name as your voicemail greeting, tap **Name**.
  - To record a custom voicemail greeting, tap **Personal Message**.

## Change your visual voicemail password

Depending on your wireless service provider, this feature might not be supported.

1. In the Phone app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** > **Voice Mail**.
3. Tap **Change Password**.

## Prevent visual voicemail messages from downloading while you are roaming

Depending on your wireless service provider, this feature might not be supported.

1. In the Phone app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** > **Voice Mail**.
3. Clear the **International Roaming** check box.

## Deactivate visual voicemail on your device

If you deactivate your visual voicemail service on your BlackBerry device, you must contact your wireless service provider to reactivate it. Depending on your wireless service provider, this feature might not be supported.

1. In the Phone app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings**.
3. Tap **Voice Mail** > **Deactivate**.

# Voice Control

The Voice Control app can make multitasking easier by allowing you to perform various actions and tasks with your voice. Instead of navigating to a specific app, you can simply open the Voice Control app and speak your commands.

## Using the BlackBerry Voice Control app

You can use the Voice Control app to do the following:

- Make a call.
- Send an email, text message, or BBM message.
- Search the Internet or your BlackBerry device.
- Book meetings and appointments.

- Set reminders.
  - Change your Facebook status or post a tweet.
  - Save notes and memos in BlackBerry Remember.
  - Set an alarm.
1. To open the Voice Control app, do one of the following:
    - On the home screen, tap the **Voice Control** icon.
    - Press and hold the **Mute** key on the right side of your device.
  2. After the beep, say a command.

## Making a phone call with the voice Control app

Using the Voice Control app, you can make a phone call by saying a phone number, or by saying the name of someone in your Contacts app.

### Dial a number

1. To open the Voice Control app, press and hold the **Mute** key on the right side of your BlackBerry device.
2. After the beep, say "Dial" and the number that you want to call.

### Call a contact

1. To open the Voice Control app, press and hold the **Mute** key on the right side of your BlackBerry device.
2. After the beep, say a command. For example, "Call Megan Ball." If you have multiple numbers for a contact, you can specify which number you want to call. For example, you can say "Call her at work."

## Searching using the Voice Control app

When you say your search terms, the Voice Control app automatically searches your BlackBerry device first. To search the Internet before searching your device, specify that you want to search the Internet when you say your search terms. For example, "Search the Internet for electric cars."

To help improve your search results, be as specific as possible with your search terms. For example, "Search contacts for Megan Ball," "Search for messages from Matthew," or "Search for notes containing the word dogs."

### Search your device using the Voice Control App

1. To open the Voice Control app, press and hold the **Mute** key on the right side of your BlackBerry device.
2. After the beep, say your search terms. For example, "Search contacts for Megan Ball."

### Search the Internet using the Voice Control app

1. To open the Voice Control app, press and hold the **Mute** key on the right side of your BlackBerry device.

2. After the beep, say your search terms and specify that you want to search the Internet. For example, "search the Internet for custom cars."

## Ask a question using the Voice Control app

You can ask a variety of questions using the Voice Control app. If your question can't be answered, you'll have the option of searching the Internet for your question.

1. To open the Voice Control app, press and hold the **Mute** key on the right side of your BlackBerry device.
2. After the beep, ask a question. For example, you can say "How many people live in Canada?" "What is the square root of 36?" or "Why is the sky blue?"

## Send messages using the Voice Control app

Using the Voice Control app, you can send a text message, email, or BBM message without typing a single word. Just specify which type of message that you want to send and who you want to send it to, then compose your message aloud.

1. To open the Voice Control app, press and hold the **Mute** key on the right side of your BlackBerry device.
2. When you hear the beep, say your command. For example, "send an email to Tanya McPherson" or "Text Elliot Fung 'I'm on my way.'"

## Book a meeting or appointment with the Voice Control app

1. To open the Voice Control app, press and hold the **Mute** key on the right side of your BlackBerry device.
2. After the beep, say the date, time, subject, and location of the meeting or appointment. For example, "Schedule a doctor's appointment tomorrow at 2 o'clock at the medical center."

**Tip:** To add contacts to a meeting, include their names when you're scheduling the meeting. For example, "Schedule a team meeting with Nicole Lavigne on Friday at 11 o'clock."

## Set a reminder with the Voice Control app

1. To open the Voice Control app, press and hold the **Mute** key on the right side of your BlackBerry device.
2. After the beep, say what you would like to be reminded about and when you would like to be reminded. For example, "Remind me to buy milk tomorrow."

## Type using voice dictation

You can use voice dictation to type hands-free instead of using your keyboard.

1. To turn on voice dictation, on the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** **Settings** > **Voice Control**.

### 3. Tap **Enable Dictation**.

Once you turn on voice dictation, when your keyboard appears, tap the **Microphone** key to begin voice dictation.

## Set an alarm using the Voice Control app

1. To open the Voice Control app, press and hold the **Mute** key on the right side of your BlackBerry device.
2. After the beep, say "Set an alarm," and the time that you want to set the alarm for. For example, "Set an alarm for 6:00" or "Set an alarm for one hour from now."

## Get directions using the Voice Control app

When you get directions using the Voice Control app, the directions appear in the Maps app.

1. To open the Voice Control app, press and hold the **Mute** key on the right side of your BlackBerry device.
2. After the beep, say "Get directions to" or "Go to" and say an address, city, or point of interest. For example, you can say "Get directions to 175 Columbia St. West, Waterloo, Ontario" or "Go to New York City."  
The address, city, or point of interest opens in the Maps app. If more than one result is found for your address, city, or point of interest, tap **The View List icon**. Tap a destination.

## Change your Facebook status using the Voice Control app

1. To open the Voice Control app, press and hold the **Mute** key on the right side of your BlackBerry device.
2. After the beep, say "Update my Facebook status" and say your status. For example, "Update my Facebook status to heading to the movies tonight."

## Post a tweet using the Voice Control app

1. To open the Voice Control app, press and hold the **Mute** key on the right side of your BlackBerry device.
2. After the beep, say "Tweet" and say your tweet. For example, "Tweet heading to the car show today."

## Post a LinkedIn update using the Voice Control app

1. To open the Voice Control app, press and hold the **Mute** key on the right side of your BlackBerry device.
2. After the beep, say "LinkedIn" and your update. For example, "LinkedIn heading to the conference room for a meeting."

## Save notes and memos using the Voice Control app

The notes and memos you create with the Voice Control app are saved as entries in BlackBerry Remember.

1. To open the Voice Control app, press and hold the **Mute** key on the right side of your BlackBerry device.
2. After the beep, say "Make a note" and say what you want your note to contain. For example, "Make a note to call Mom."

## Check your wireless coverage status using the Voice Control app

1. To open the Voice Control app, press and hold the **Mute** key on the right side of your BlackBerry device.
2. After the beep, do one of the following:
  - To check your mobile network coverage, say "How many bars do I have?"
  - To check your Wi-Fi connection status, say "What is my Wi-Fi status?"
  - To check both your mobile network coverage and Wi-Fi connection status, say, "What is my signal strength?"

## Check your battery level using the Voice Control app

1. To open the Voice Control app, press and hold the **Mute** key on the right side of your BlackBerry device.
2. After the beep, say "What is my battery level?"

## Hear your latest unread message read back to you

You can hear your latest unread email message or text message.

1. To open the Voice Control app, press and hold the **Mute** key on the right side of your BlackBerry device.
2. After the beep, say "Read my last email," or "Read my last text."

## Change your Voice Control language

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings Settings > Voice Control**.
3. In the **Language** drop-down list, tap a language.

## Change the voice recognition mode

The Voice Control app has two voice recognition modes. When you choose **Voice Dialing Only**, you can use the Voice Control app in more languages, but you will be unable to use many features, such as searching your BlackBerry device and the Internet, booking appointments, and sending messages. When you choose **Voice Recognition**, you can use all of the features that the Voice Control app supports.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings Settings > Voice Control**.



3. In the **Voice recognition mode** drop-down list, tap **Voice Dialing Only** or **Voice Recognition**.

## Change your voice response settings

When you say commands, you can set the Voice Control app to respond to you and confirm your command or ask for the next command.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** **Settings** > **Voice Control**.
3. Do any of the following:
  - To turn on or turn off voice responses, in the **Hear voice feedback** drop-down list, tap **Always** or **Never**.
  - To hear voice responses only when you're not using a headset, in the **Hear voice feedback** drop-down list, tap **Handset Only**.

# BlackBerry Hub and email

## BlackBerry Hub and email

The BlackBerry Hub gathers all of the messages, notifications, and events that you receive from your different accounts into one convenient location. In the BlackBerry Hub, you can receive and respond to email, text messages, or BBM chats all in the same place. Additionally, you can see and respond to direct messages and notifications from your social networking accounts, glance at your upcoming events, and more.

## Staying connected with the BlackBerry Hub

### Email

You can add practically any existing email account to your device—both work and web-based email.

### Text messages (SMS/MMS)

If text messaging is a part of your wireless service plan, you can find and respond to your text messages in the BlackBerry Hub.

### Social networking

If you add a Facebook account to your device, you can receive and respond to notifications, update your status, and send Facebook messages all from the BlackBerry Hub. If you add a Twitter account, you can compose tweets, stay up-to-date on your mentions, and send direct messages. And if you add a LinkedIn account, you can accept invitations to connect with business contacts, send messages to your connections, and update your LinkedIn status.

### BBM and instant messaging

After you add instant messaging apps to your device, you can access your chats through the BlackBerry Hub.

### Calls and voice mail

You can make calls directly from the BlackBerry Hub. The BlackBerry Hub shows you the calls that you made and received, including any missed calls and voice mail messages.

### Upcoming events

Without leaving the BlackBerry Hub, you can peek at upcoming meetings, events, and—if you add your Facebook account—friends' birthdays.

### Notifications

The BlackBerry Hub collects your notifications about new PIN messages, time zone changes, software updates, third-party apps, and more. Your service provider might send you SIM Toolkit notifications that appear in the BlackBerry Hub. Tapping on these notifications opens the SIM Toolkit app.

# Keyboard shortcuts: BlackBerry Hub

## In the list of messages

Compose a message	Press <b>C</b>
Search the BlackBerry Hub	Press <b>S</b>
Go to the next unread message in the list	Press <b>U</b>
Move to the top of your list of messages and notifications	Press <b>T</b>
Move to the bottom of your list of messages and notifications	Press <b>B</b>

## In a message

Reply to a message	Press <b>R</b>
Reply all to a message	Press <b>L</b>
Forward a message	Press <b>F</b>
Flag a message	Press <b>W</b>
File a message	Press <b>I</b>

# Setting up and managing accounts

You can add email accounts, social networking accounts (such as Facebook, Twitter, and LinkedIn), or even an Evernote account to your device.

## Tutorial: Setting up an email account on a BlackBerry 10 device

This tutorial provides you with the opportunity to see and then practice setting up an email account on a BlackBerry 10 device.

**Note:** This tutorial is available in English only.

[Start the tutorial](#)

<http://docs.blackberry.com/tutorials/email/en>

## Tutorial: Setting up a Facebook account on a BlackBerry 10 device

This tutorial provides you with the opportunity to see and then practice setting up a Facebook account on a BlackBerry 10 device.

**Note:** This tutorial is available in English only.

[Start the tutorial](#)

<http://docs.blackberry.com/tutorials/facebook/en>

## Tutorial: Setting up a Twitter account on a BlackBerry 10 device

This tutorial provides you with the opportunity to see and then practice setting up a Twitter account on a BlackBerry 10 device.

**Note:** This tutorial is available in English only.

[Start the tutorial](#)

<http://docs.blackberry.com/tutorials/twitter/en>

## Tutorial: Setting up a LinkedIn account on a BlackBerry 10 device

This tutorial provides you with the opportunity to see and then practice setting up a LinkedIn account on a BlackBerry 10 device.

**Note:** This tutorial is available in English only.

[Start the tutorial](#)

<http://docs.blackberry.com/tutorials/linkedin/en>

## Tutorial: Setting up an Evernote account on a BlackBerry 10 device

This tutorial provides you with the opportunity to see and then practice setting up an Evernote account on a BlackBerry 10 device.

**Note:** This tutorial is available in English only.

[Start the tutorial](#)

<http://docs.blackberry.com/tutorials/evernote/en>

## Set up email or other types of accounts on your device

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.

2. Tap **The Settings icon** **Settings > Accounts**.
3. If you already added an account to your device, tap **The Add Account icon** to add another account.

## Add an email account

1. On the **Add Account** screen, tap **Email, Calendar and Contacts**.
2. Enter the email address.
3. Tap **Next**.
4. Enter the password for the account.
5. Tap **Next**.
6. Change any additional settings (for example, the types of content to sync with your device).
7. Tap **Done**.

## Add a social networking or Evernote account

You can add a Facebook, Twitter, LinkedIn, or Evernote account to your device. When you add an Evernote account to your device, your Evernote notebooks are available in BlackBerry Reminders.

1. On the **Add Account** screen, tap **Facebook, Twitter, LinkedIn, or Evernote**.
2. Enter your account information.
  - If necessary, change any sync settings.
  - If you're adding a Facebook account, to change when you're reminded about friends' birthdays, in the **Birthday Reminders** drop-down list, tap a reminder option.
3. Tap **Done**. If necessary, tap **Authorize**.

## Add a BlackBerry email account

If you set up a BlackBerry email account (normally in the format user@serviceprovider>.blackberry.com) on a previous BlackBerry device, to continue to receive messages for that account on your BlackBerry 10 device, you must set up a forwarding email address and then add that email address to your device.

1. On the **Add Account** screen, tap **Email, Calendar and Contacts**.
2. Enter the email address.
3. Tap **Next**.
4. Enter the password for the account.
5. Tap **Next**.
6. On the **Forwarding** screen, complete the fields to add a forwarding email address.
7. Tap **Next**.

**Note:** It can take 5 to 15 minutes before your email is forwarded to the forwarding email address.

To receive your BlackBerry email on your device, make sure that you add the forwarding email account to your device.

## Setting up work accounts

### Add a work account supported by BlackBerry Enterprise Service 10

If your organization uses BlackBerry Enterprise Service 10, you can add your work account to your device and take advantage of features like BlackBerry Balance. If your organization hasn't upgraded to BlackBerry Enterprise Service 10 and is using BlackBerry Enterprise Service 5 or earlier, you can still add your work account and have it use Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync. For more information, contact your administrator.

Make sure you know the following from your administrator:

- Your username
- Your enterprise activation password
- Server name

1. On the **Add Account** screen, tap **The Advanced icon** > **Work Account**.
2. Enter the username, activation password, and server address for your account.
3. Tap **Done**.

After you add a work account, follow the prompts to set a work space password to use with BlackBerry Balance and to enter your work network password.

### Add an email account supported by Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync

Make sure you know the following from your administrator or your email service provider:

- Your username and work network password
- Server address

When you add an email account that's supported by Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync, messages, calendar events, contacts, tasks, and notes associated with the account are synced with your BlackBerry device.

1. On the **Add Account** screen, tap **The Advanced icon** > **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync**.
2. Enter the username, email address, password, and server address for the account.
  - To turn off push email, set the **Push** switch to **Off**. To set how frequently your device checks for new messages, in the **Sync Interval** drop-down list, tap an option.
  - To use your organization's VPN, set the **VPN** switch to **On**.
  - To change how far back in time your device syncs messages, in the **Sync Timeframe** drop-down list, tap an option.
3. Tap **Next**.

**Tip:** Flagged email messages are saved in the Remember app.

## Add an IBM Notes Traveler email account

Make sure you know the following from your administrator or email service provider:

- Your username and work network password
- Server address

When you add an IBM Notes Traveler email account, messages, calendar events, contacts, tasks, and notes associated with the account are synced with your BlackBerry device.

1. On the **Add Account** screen, tap **The Advanced icon** > **IBM Notes Traveler**.
2. Enter the username, email address, password, and server address for the account.
  - To turn off push email, turn off the **Push** switch. To set how frequently your device checks for new messages, in the **Sync Interval** drop-down list, tap an option.
  - To use your organization's VPN, turn on the **Use VPN** switch.
  - To change how far back in time your device syncs messages, in the **Sync Timeframe** drop-down list, tap an option.
3. Tap **Next**.

## Add an IMAP or POP email account

Make sure you know the following information from your email service provider or administrator:

- Messaging server type (POP or IMAP)
- Incoming and outgoing messaging server address
- Incoming and outgoing messaging server port numbers
- Incoming and outgoing messaging server SSL settings

**Note:** To increase the activation speed of IMAP email accounts, it is recommended that you enter the **IMAP Path Prefix**. For more information, contact your administrator.

1. On the **Add Account** screen, tap **The Settings icon** > **IMAP or POP**.
2. Enter the account information.
  - To set how frequently your BlackBerry device checks for new messages (if push email isn't supported), in the **Sync Interval** drop-down list, tap an option.
  - To change the how long messages can be retrieved on your device, in the **Sync Timeframe** drop-down list, tap an option.
3. Tap **Done**.

## Add a CalDAV or CardDAV account

Make sure you know the following information:

- Your username and password

- The email address associated with the account.
- The server address for the account.

You can add a CalDAV or CardDAV account to sync calendar events or contacts, respectively.

1. In the **Add Account** screen, tap **The Advanced icon** > **CalDAV** or **CardDAV**.
2. Enter the account information.
3. Tap **Done**.

## Change account settings

You might want to change the settings for an account if you changed the password for the account, if you want to change the display name for the account, or if you want to use different synchronization settings.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **The Settings icon** **Settings** > **Accounts**.
3. Tap an account.
4. Make your changes.
5. Tap **Save**.

## Remove an account from your device

To stop receiving messages and notifications for an account and to stop syncing calendar and contact info for that account, you can remove the account from your BlackBerry device.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** **Settings** > **Accounts**.
3. Tap an account.
4. Tap **Delete**.

## Troubleshooting: Setting up accounts

### I can't add an email account

Try the following:

- Make sure that your email address and password have been typed correctly.
- Make sure that your device is connected to a mobile or Wi-Fi network.
- Add the email account using advanced setup. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap **Image Settings** > **Accounts** > **The Add Account icon** > **The Advanced icon**. Tap the type of account that you want to add. You might need to get additional information about your account from your administrator or email service provider.



- If you're trying to add a work account supported by BlackBerry Enterprise Service 10, make sure that you have an activation password from your administrator.
- If you're trying to add an email account supported by Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync, contact your administrator or email service provider to find out if you need to change any settings for the account.

## I can't add a second social networking account

You can add only one Facebook account, one Twitter account, and one LinkedIn account to your BlackBerry device.

## BlackBerry Hub message list icons

Icon	Description
The unread email icon	Unread email
The read email icon	Read email
The meeting invitation icon	Meeting or event invitation
The Facebook notification icon	New Facebook notification
The email with attachment icon	Email with attachment
The draft email icon	Draft message
The conversation thread icon	Email messages grouped by subject in a conversation thread
The unread SMS text message icon	Unread text message (SMS)
The read SMS text message icon	Read text message
The MMS message icon	Text message with attachment (MMS)
The draft text message icon	Draft text message
The system notification icon	New system notification
The message pending icon	Message hasn't been sent yet
The message sending icon	Message is being sent
The message sent icon	Message has been sent
The problem sending icon	Message could not be sent

## Viewing and searching messages

You can view all of your messages and notifications in the Hub view in the BlackBerry Hub. Or, you can view messages for a specific account type or message type. You can search for a specific message, or customize your view so that you see only the messages and notifications that are important to you.

### Navigate your list of messages and notifications

In the BlackBerry Hub, touch and hold a date bar.

- To go to messages and notifications for the next day, tap **The Next icon**.
- To go to messages and notifications for the previous day, tap **The Previous icon**.
- To go to the top of your list of messages and notifications, tap **The To Top icon**.
- To go to the bottom of your list of messages and notifications, tap **The To Bottom icon**.

### View messages by account or message type

If you want to see messages only from a particular account (for example, your personal email account) or by a type (for example, your text messages), you can filter them.

1. In the BlackBerry Hub, tap **The Hub icon**.
2. Tap the type of messages that you want to see.

To see all of your messages again, tap **The Hub icon** > **Hub**.

### View filed email

1. In the BlackBerry Hub, tap the drop-down list at the top of the screen.
2. Tap a folder.

### Search for a message

1. In the BlackBerry Hub, tap **The Search icon**.
2. Type a search term.

To filter your search results by sender, date, subject, and more, tap **The Advanced Search icon**.

## Filter your search by priority, unread messages, flagged messages, or messages with attachments

1. In the BlackBerry Hub, tap **The Search icon**.
2. Leave the Search field empty and tap **The Advanced Search icon**.
3. Tap **Priority, Unread, Flagged, Received, or Attachment**.
4. Tap **The Advanced Search icon** again.

To see all of your messages again, tap **Cancel** at the top of the screen.

**Tip:** You can also find your flagged messages in BlackBerry Remember, in the Flagged Messages task list (for work accounts) or the Unfiled task list (for personal accounts).

## Viewing important messages with the BlackBerry Priority Hub

With the BlackBerry Priority Hub feature, important messages are highlighted so that you can quickly find them in the BlackBerry Hub.

To identify priority messages, your BlackBerry device looks at whether a message is flagged as important, whether the sender is a frequent contact, and other criteria.

You can help your device learn which messages are important to you by changing the priority of a message. For example, if a message is important to you but it's not included in the BlackBerry Priority Hub, you can add it.

## View only your priority messages

In the BlackBerry Hub, do one of the following:

- Tap **The Hub icon** > **Priority Hub**.
- If your Pinch Filter Criteria is set to Priority Messages, slide your fingers together to zoom in on your priority messages.

**Tip:** You can change your settings to specify which messages zooming in will show. In the BlackBerry Hub, tap **The More icon** > **The Settings icon** > **Display and Actions**. In the **Pinch Filter Criteria** drop-down list, select **Priority Messages, Unread Messages, Flagged Messages, Draft Messages, Meeting Invites, Sent Messages** or **Level 1 Messages**.

## Add a message to or remove a message from the BlackBerry Priority Hub

Adding messages to and removing messages from the BlackBerry Priority Hub helps your BlackBerry device learn which messages to highlight as priority in the future.

1. In the BlackBerry Hub, touch and hold a message.
  - To add a message to the BlackBerry Priority Hub, tap **The Add Priority icon**.
  - To remove a message from the BlackBerry Priority Hub, tap **The Remove Priority icon**.
2. In the dialog box, choose a reason why the message is or isn't important.

3. Tap **OK**.

## Change the types of messages that are marked as priority

By default, if the sender of a message has the same last name as you or if a message is marked with high importance, then those messages are included in the BlackBerry Priority Hub. You can turn off each of these settings.

1. In the BlackBerry Hub, tap **The more actions icon** > **The Settings icon** > **Priority Hub**.
2. Turn off the **Sender has the Same Last Name as Me** or **Message Sent with High Importance** switch.

## Create a priority rule

You can create a rule so that messages that are sent from specific accounts, or with a specific subject, or with other specific criteria are sent to your BlackBerry Priority Hub. You can also set a Level 1 alert for specific messages so that you receive a custom notification when these messages are sent to you.

1. Tap **The More icon** > **The Settings icon** > **Priority Hub**.
2. Tap **The Add Rule icon**.
3. Do any of the following:
  - To add a name to your rule, enter a name in the **Filter Name** field.
  - To flag messages from a specific email address as priority, enter an email address in the **From** field.
  - To flag messages with a specific subject as priority, enter a subject in the **Subject** field.
  - To flag messages that are sent directly to you or that you are copied on as priority, select the **Sent Directly to Me** or the **Cc: to Me** checkbox.
  - To set a Level 1 alert for your rule, select the **Enable Level 1 Alert** checkbox.
4. Tap **Create**.

**Note:** Level 1 alerts override the existing notification settings. When you set Level 1 alerts, you are notified of Level 1 messages by a custom ring tone. The BlackBerry Hub displays Level 1 messages in red. To change your settings for Level 1 alert notifications, tap **Level 1 Alerts Notification Settings**.

## Turn off the BlackBerry Priority Hub

1. In the BlackBerry Hub, tap **The more actions icon** > **The Settings icon** > **Priority Hub**.
2. Turn off the **Priority Hub** switch.

## View attachments sent to you

You can quickly find the files sent to you and avoid searching through your messages.

In the BlackBerry Hub, do one of the following:

- To see all of the files that you received as attachments, tap **The Attachments icon**.
- To view attachments in a message, tap a message. Tap the attachment.

**Tip:** You can also filter attachments by a specific account. In the BlackBerry Hub, tap **The Hub icon** in the bottom left corner. Tap an account. Tap **The Attachments icon**.

## Download attachments in a message

You can download attachments in an email message one at a time or all at once, depending on your needs.

- In a message with one attachment or to download one attachment at a time, tap an attachment.
- To download all attachments in a message at once, tap **The Download All icon**.

## Sort attachments

You can sort attachments by date, sender, name, type (for example, by pictures and documents), or account.

1. In the BlackBerry Hub, tap **The Attachments icon**.
2. Tap **The more actions icon** > **The Sort icon**.
3. In the **Sort** drop-down list, tap a sort option.

## Share or save your attachments

1. In the BlackBerry Hub, tap **the Attachments icon**.
2. Touch and hold an attachment.
3. Tap **The Download icon**.
4. When the download is complete, touch and hold the attachment.
  - To share the attachment, tap **the Share icon**.
  - To save the attachment, tap **the Save icon**.

**Tip:** To share or save multiple attachments, tap **the more actions icon** > **the Select icon**. Select some attachments. Tap **the Share icon** or **the Save icon**.

## Send email and messages from the BlackBerry Hub

From the BlackBerry Hub, you can send email, text messages, Facebook messages, direct Twitter messages, LinkedIn messages, BBM messages, or other types of chat messages, depending on your wireless service plan and the accounts that you added to your BlackBerry device.

1. In the BlackBerry Hub, tap **The Compose icon**.
2. Tap a message type.
3. Add or choose a recipient for your message:
  - For email, type a contact name or an email address in the **To** field. You can tap suggested contacts that appear below the **To** field to quickly add them to the message.
  - For Facebook, Twitter, or LinkedIn messages, type a contact name in the **To** field.

- For text messages, type a contact name or a phone number.
  - For BBM and other chat messages, select a contact from the list.
4. Type your message.
  5. Tap **Send** or the **Enter** key.

## Reply to or forward an email

In an email, do one or the following:

- To reply to the email, tap **Reply**.
- To reply to all recipients of the email, tap **Reply All**.
- To forward the email, tap **Forward**.

**Tip:** When you reply to an email, you have the option to delete the text in the original message. To delete the text in the original message, tap **The More icon** > **The Delete Original Text icon**.

## Attach a file to an email or text message

If your wireless service plan supports MMS messages, you can add an attachment to a text message.

1. While composing an email or text message, tap **The Attach icon**.
2. Find the file.
3. Tap the file.

**Tip:** When you send an email with a picture attachment, you can reduce the size of the message by reducing the size of picture attachments. On the **Image Size** screen, tap **Size**. Tap **Send**.

## Add a BCC recipient to an email

1. While composing a message, tap **The More icon** > **The Add BCC icon**.
2. Type a contact name or email address.

## Send a meeting invitation from an email message

While composing an email message, you can send a meeting invitation to a recipient or send a supplementary message.

1. While composing a message, touch and hold a name in the **To**, **CC** or **BCC** field.
2. Do one of the following:
  - To send a separate email message to the recipient, tap **The Send Email icon**.
  - To send a meeting invitation to the recipient, tap **Invite to Meeting**.

- To add the recipient to your Contacts, tap **The Add to Contacts icon**.

## Compose an email in plain text format

You can reduce the size of email messages or email threads by switching from HTML format to plain text format.

1. In an email, tap **The More icon**.
2. Tap **The Plain Text icon**.

## Change text formatting in an email

Bold, italicize, and underline text; create ordered and bulleted lists; and change the font size and colors.

1. While composing a message, tap **The Format icon**.
2. Use the formatting toolbar to apply formatting to your text.

## Forward a text message

1. In the BlackBerry Hub, touch and hold a text message.
2. Tap **Forward**.

## Managing messages

Stay organized by managing your messages in the BlackBerry Hub. You can file messages, flag important messages, or save draft messages for later.

### Delete a message

In the BlackBerry Hub, do any of the following:

- To delete a single message, touch and hold the message. Tap **The Delete icon**.
- To delete more than one message, touch and hold a message. Tap **The Select More icon**. Tap the other messages you want to delete. Tap **The Delete icon**.
- To delete all messages before a specific date, touch and hold the date bar. Messages that were sent or received before that date are highlighted. Tap **The Delete Prior icon**.
- To delete messages only from your device, but keep them on the messaging server, tap **The More icon** > **The Settings icon** > **Display and Actions**. In the **Delete On** drop-down list, select **Hub Only**.

## Filing email

You might not be able to file an email or create folders for an email, depending on the account that an email is in.

## File an email

1. In the BlackBerry Hub, touch and hold an email.
2. Tap **File**.
3. Tap a folder.

## Add, rename, or delete an email folder

In the BlackBerry Hub, tap the drop-down list at the top of the screen.

- To add a folder, touch and hold the folder that you want to use as the parent folder. Tap **Add Folder**. Type a name for the folder. Tap **OK**.
- To rename a folder, touch and hold the folder. Tap **Rename Folder**. Type a new name for the folder. Tap **OK**.
- To delete a folder, touch and hold the folder. Tap **Delete**.

## Keep all email from a folder on your device

If you use a desktop email application like Microsoft Outlook to file email into folders, your BlackBerry device doesn't automatically download copies of that email. You can have filed email readily available on your device by syncing an email folder.

1. In the BlackBerry Hub, tap the banner at the top of the screen.
2. Touch and hold a folder.
3. Tap **The Enable Folder Sync icon**.

## Flag a message

When you flag messages, they appear in BlackBerry Remember, so that you can add due dates, tags, voice notes, and other files to them.

1. In the BlackBerry Hub, touch and hold a message.
2. Tap **Flag**.

## Sorting messages using Quick Actions

Quick Actions allow you to quickly triage messages and events in the BlackBerry Hub. From the list view, you can change the read status of messages, file, flag, and delete messages. You can also accept or decline meeting invitations without having to open them.

## Enable Quick Actions

Depending on the message type and your Quick Actions settings, different actions are available in your List View.



1. In the BlackBerry Hub, at the top right corner of the screen, tap **The Quick Actions icon**.
2. Do any of the following:
  - To delete a message, tap <The Delete icon>.
  - To file a message, tap <The File icon>, and choose a location.
  - To flag a message, tap <The Flag icon>.

## Mark a message as read or unread

In the BlackBerry Hub, do one of the following:

- To mark a message as read, touch and hold the message. Tap **The Mark Read icon**.
- To mark a message as unread, touch and hold the message. Tap **The Mark Unread icon**.
- To mark messages before a specific date as read, touch and hold the date bar. Tap **The Mark Prior Read icon**.

## Download or share a picture from an email

In a message, touch and hold an embedded picture.

- To save the picture, tap **The Save icon**.
- To share the picture, tap **The Share icon**.
- To set the picture as your BBM profile picture, a contact picture, or your wallpaper, tap **The Set as icon**.

## Save a draft email

1. While composing an email, tap **Cancel**.
2. In the dialog box, tap **Save**.

## Securing your email

You can digitally sign or encrypt messages if you use a work email account that supports S/MIME-protected messages or IBM Notes email encryption on your BlackBerry device. Digitally signing or encrypting messages adds another level of security to email messages that you send from your device.

Digital signatures are designed to help recipients verify the authenticity and integrity of messages that you send. With S/MIME-protected messages, when you digitally sign a message using your private key, recipients use your public key to verify that the message is from you and that the message hasn't been changed.

Encryption is designed to keep messages confidential. With S/MIME-protected messages, when you encrypt a message, your device uses the recipient's public key to encrypt the message. Recipients use their private key to decrypt the message.

## Set up S/MIME-protected messaging

You need to store a private key and certificate on your BlackBerry device to send signed or encrypted email messages using S/MIME-protected messaging. You can store a key and certificate by importing the files from a work email message.

Your BlackBerry device supports keys and certificates in the following file formats and file name extensions:

- PEM (.pem, .cer)
- DER (.der, .cer)
- PFX (.pfx, .p12)

1. Open a work email message with a certificate attachment.
2. Touch and hold **The certificate attachment icon**.
3. Tap **The Import Certificate icon**.
4. If necessary, enter the password.
5. Tap **The Back icon**.
6. Tap **The More icon** > **The Settings icon** > **Secure Email**.
7. If necessary, tap the **S/MIME** tab.
8. Set the **S/MIME** switch to **On**.
9. Below **Signing Certificate**, in the drop-down list, tap the certificate that you imported.
10. Below **Encryption Certificate**, in the drop-down list, tap the certificate that you imported.

## Turn on IBM Notes email encryption on your device

To complete this task, you must add a work account that supports IBM Notes email encryption to your device.

1. In the BlackBerry Hub, tap **More actions** > **The Settings icon** > **Secure Email**.
2. If necessary, tap the **NNE** tab.
3. Set the **NNE** switch to **On**.

## Sign or encrypt a message

You must use a work email account that supports S/MIME-protected messages or IBM Notes mail encryption to send a signed or encrypted email message.

1. When you compose a message, slide your finger down on the screen.
2. In the drop-down list, tap a signing or an encryption option.

**Note:** When you add recipients to an encrypted message, your device attempts to retrieve a certificate for each recipient. You are unable to send the message until certificates are received for all recipients. When the certificate status has been received, the recipients' names change color, and you can send your message.

## Update secure email settings

You can change the default email security used for messages you send. For example, if you use S/MIME to protect your messages, you can send clear-signed messages that can be opened by any email application, or opaque-signed messages that can be opened only by email applications that support encryption.

1. In the BlackBerry Hub, tap **More actions** > **The Settings icon** > **Secure Email**.
2. Do any of the following:
  - To change the default security used for messages you compose, select an option in the **Default Encoding** drop-down.

## Secure email icons

Icon	Description
Email signed with secure digital signature	The email is digitally signed.
Encrypted email	The email is encrypted.
Verified digital signature	The digital signature was successfully verified.
Signature has not been verified	There is not enough information to verify the digital signature.
Signature cannot be verified	The digital signature failed verification.
Certificate attached	A certificate is attached to the email.
Trusted certificate	The certificate chain is trusted or the certificate status is good.
Certificate chain error	There is an error with the certificate chain or the certificate status.
Certificate chain credentials untrusted	The certificate status is being determined.
Certificate chain credentials revoked	The certificate chain has been revoked.

## Navigating the BlackBerry Hub

### Peek at your messages in the BlackBerry Hub from anywhere

Whether you're on your home screen or using an application, you can peek at or open the BlackBerry Hub from anywhere on the device.

1. From the bottom of the screen, slide your finger up just a little bit. The current view shrinks to show your notifications.
2. Slide your finger to the right to peek at the BlackBerry Hub.
  - To fully open the BlackBerry Hub, continue sliding your finger to the right.
  - To return to what you were doing, slide your finger back to the left and down.

## Peek at your messages and notifications while you're composing or viewing a message

In a message, slowly slide your finger from the left edge of the message to the right. Continue sliding to bring your list of messages and notifications into view.

## Jump to the next or previous message

1. In a message, slowly slide your finger from the left edge of the message to the right to peek at your list of messages.
2. While holding the message open, slide your finger up or down to highlight the next or previous message in the list.
3. To open the highlighted message, release your finger.

## Check your upcoming events from the BlackBerry Hub

You can check your agenda in the BlackBerry Calendar app, but if you're already in the BlackBerry Hub, just stay where you are.

At the top of your list of messages and notifications, where today's date appears, slowly drag down. Your upcoming events start to appear. The more you drag, the more you see.

## Create a meeting from an email

When you create a meeting or event from an email, your BlackBerry device populates the invitation with the subject line from the email, and the recipients of the email become the invitees.

1. In an email, tap **The more actions icon** > **The Invite to Meeting icon**.
2. Enter any additional information for the meeting.
3. Tap **Save**.

## Add a contact from the BlackBerry Hub

1. In the BlackBerry Hub, touch and hold a message.
2. Tap **The Add to contacts icon**.
  - To add the contact to an existing contact entry (for example, to add a new email address for a contact), tap a contact from the list.
  - To add the contact as a new contact, tap **The Add icon**.
3. Tap **Save**.

## Refresh your list of messages

If you added an email account that doesn't support push messaging services, you can refresh the BlackBerry Hub to check for new messages.

In the BlackBerry Hub, tap **More actions** > **Refresh**.

## Customizing BlackBerry Hub settings

You can customize a variety of settings in the BlackBerry Hub. For example, you can change your default email address or calendar, or the order that your accounts appear in. You can also set an out-of-office reply using your BlackBerry device.

### Set an out-of-office reply

Some email accounts might not support out-of-office replies.

1. In the BlackBerry Hub, tap **The more actions icon** > **The Settings icon** > **Email Accounts**.
2. Tap an email account.
3. Turn on the **Out of Office Reply** switch.
4. Type a message in the field.

### Add a signature to an email account

1. In the BlackBerry Hub, tap **Menu icon** > **Settings** > **Email Accounts**.
2. Tap an email account.
3. Set the **Auto Signature** switch to **On**.
4. Type your signature in the field.

## Change your default email address or calendar

When you share something (for example, a picture or a website) by email or when you compose a new email, your BlackBerry device sends the email from your default email address. When you add an event to your calendar or send a meeting invitation, your device adds the event to your default calendar.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** **Settings > Accounts**.
3. Tap **Set defaults**.
  - To change the default account that you send email from, in the **Email Address** drop-down list, tap an account.
  - To change the default calendar that you add events to and send meeting invitations from, in the **Calendar** drop-down list, tap a calendar.

## Change how messages are displayed in the BlackBerry Hub

Change whether the BlackBerry Hub shows your sent messages or filed messages, how you view message threads, and how the date appears at the top of your list of messages and notifications. You can also change how the senders' names are displayed, whether pictures are automatically downloaded, and more.

1. In the BlackBerry Hub, tap **The More icon** > **The Settings icon** > **Display and Actions**.
2. Change your settings. For example, change any of the following settings.
  - To view messages as conversation threads instead of single messages, in the **Display Style** drop-down list, tap **Conversation**.
  - To stop showing filed messages, turn off the **Show Filed Messages** switch.
  - To stop showing sent messages, turn off the **Show Sent Messages** switch.

## Color code your accounts

To help you distinguish between different types of accounts in the BlackBerry Hub, you can choose a color for each of your accounts. The color appears on the left side in your list of messages.

1. In the BlackBerry Hub, tap **The More icon** > **The Settings icon** > **Hub Management**.
2. Tap an account.
3. In the **Account Color** drop-down list, tap a color.

## Change the order of accounts in the BlackBerry Hub

You can change the order in which the BlackBerry Hub displays the accounts in the Account Tab. For example, you can move your favorite accounts or the accounts that you use most frequently to the top of the list.

1. In the BlackBerry Hub, tap **The More icon** > **The Settings icon** > **Hub Management**.

2. Tap **The Sort icon**.
3. Touch and hold an account, then slide your finger up or down to change where the account appears in the list of accounts in the Account Tab.
4. To save your changes, tap **The Done icon**.

## Change which messages appear in the BlackBerry Hub

You can choose to hide messages for some accounts, so they don't appear in the Hub Tab in the BlackBerry Hub. Calendar and contact syncing aren't impacted by these settings.

1. In the BlackBerry Hub, tap **The More icon** > **The Settings icon** > **Hub Management**.
2. Tap an account.
3. In the **Show in** list, tap **Show in Hub Only**, **Show in Separate Account Only** or **Show in Both**.

## Change options for text messages

In the BlackBerry Hub, tap **The More icon** > **The Settings icon** > **Settings** > **Text Messages**.

- To receive a delivery or read notification for the messages you send, tap the **SMS** tab or the **MMS** tab. Turn on the **Confirm Delivery** switch or the **Confirm Read** switch.
- To allow other devices to see when you receive or read a text message with an attachment, tap the **MMS** tab. Turn on the **Allow Delivery Confirmation** switch or the **Allow Read Confirmation** switch.
- To block unwanted MMS messages, tap the **MMS** tab. Turn on the **Reject Anonymous Messages** switch or the **Reject Advertisements** switch.
- To stop receiving MMS messages while roaming, tap the **MMS** tab. In the **Auto Retrieval Mode** drop-down list, tap **Home Only**.
- To change the background of text message conversations, tap the **SMS** tab. Turn the **Dark Background** switch on or off.

## Change advanced settings for text messages

With the advanced settings for SMS and MMS messages, you can allow special characters, change your routing preference, and more.

1. In the BlackBerry Hub, tap **The more actions icon** > **The Settings icon** > **Settings** > **Text Messages** > **The Advanced icon**.
2. Make your changes.
3. Tap **Save**.

## Turn off cell broadcast messages

Your service provider might send you cell broadcast messages when you're using your BlackBerry device in certain geographical locations (for example, to tell you about local weather conditions). There is no charge associated with these messages, but you can turn them off if you'd rather not see them.

In the BlackBerry Hub, tap **The more actions icon** > **The Settings icon** > **Cell Broadcast**.

- To turn off all cell broadcast messages, set the **Enable Cell Broadcast** switch to **Off**.
- To turn off messages from a specific channel, beside a channel, tap **Remove**.

## Update your Facebook, Twitter, or LinkedIn status from the BlackBerry Hub

1. In the BlackBerry Hub, tap **The Hub icon**.
2. Tap **Facebook**, **Twitter**, or **LinkedIn**.
3. Tap **Status**.
4. Type your status.
5. Tap **Post**, **Tweet**, or **Send**.

## Make a phone call from the BlackBerry Hub

1. Tap **The Hub icon** > **Calls**.
2. Tap **The Dial Pad icon**.

## About public warning messages

Public warning systems are used to send alert messages to users with enabled mobile devices. Public warning messages are text messages that alert users of possible threats to safety in their area. Messages may include severe weather warnings, missing child alerts, or national emergencies.

Depending on your wireless service provider, public warning messages don't contribute to data usage in your wireless service plan. This feature might not be supported, depending on your region, service provider, and wireless network. For more information, contact your service provider or administrator.

## Unsubscribe from public warning messages

You might not be able to unsubscribe from some public warning messages, depending on your region and wireless network.



1. In the BlackBerry Hub, tap **More actions** > **Settings** > **Emergency Alerts**.
2. Set the switch beside a type of public warning to **Off**.

## Troubleshooting: BlackBerry Hub

### Troubleshooting wizard: I'm having problems using email

The troubleshooting wizard guides you through a series of questions and tasks that are intended to help you solve your email issue.

[Start the troubleshooting wizard](#)

<http://docs.blackberry.com/troubleshootingwizard/en>

**Note:** This troubleshooting wizard is available in English only.

### I'm not receiving messages

Try the following:

- If you recently changed an account password, make sure that you update the password in the Accounts settings on your BlackBerry device. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap **The Settings icon** **Settings** > **Accounts**. Tap an account. Make your changes. Tap **Save**.
- Check your network connection settings to make sure that your device is connected to a Wi-Fi or mobile network. If you're not in a wireless coverage area, you should receive messages when you return to a wireless coverage area.
- If you're connected to a mobile network, check that data services are turned on. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap **The Settings icon** **Settings** > **Networks and Connections** > **Mobile Network**. Make sure the **Data Services** switch is turned on.

### I can only see email for the last 30 days

For some types of email accounts, the default timeframe that your BlackBerry device initially syncs email is 30 days in the past. To change this setting, on the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap **Image** **Settings** > **Accounts**. Tap the email account. In the **Sync Timeframe** drop-down list, tap an option. Tap **Save**.

### I can't find my work email in the BlackBerry Hub

If you added a work account to your BlackBerry device, your administrator might have turned on a policy that separates the BlackBerry Hub into a work view, which contains your messages and notifications for only your work account, and a personal view, which contains your messages and notifications for only your personal accounts.

To see the work view, in the BlackBerry Hub, tap **The Hub icon** > **Switch To Work**.

## I can't see the recipients for a message

To see the other recipients of a message and the account that you received the message in, in the message, at the top-right corner of the screen, tap the arrow.

## I can't send or forward a text message

You might not be able to forward an SMS or MMS message if the content of the message includes copyright-protected information.

If you use a work account that is supported by a BlackBerry Enterprise Server, your administrator might not allow you to send text messages, but you might still be able to receive text messages.

## I can't attach a file to a text message

The file might be too large, or your wireless service plan might not support MMS messaging, which is required to attach files to text messages. Contact your service provider for more information.

# BBM

With BBM, you can chat and share in real-time with your BBM contacts, and know when someone has read your message. Type, talk, or post. You decide the best way to communicate with people in BBM.

For more information, see the [BBM User Guide](#).

# Facebook

You can use the Facebook for BlackBerry devices app to stay connected with your friends. Send messages, chat with your friends, invite new friends, upload pictures to your Facebook account, and more.

For more information on Facebook for BlackBerry devices, see the [Facebook User Guide](#).

# Twitter

You can use the Twitter for BlackBerry devices app to stay connected almost anywhere you go. You can post tweets, send direct messages to friends, search Twitter, add pictures to your tweets, and more.


For more information on the Twitter for BlackBerry devices app, see the [Twitter User Guide](#).

## LinkedIn


You can use the LinkedIn app on your BlackBerry device to stay connected with your colleagues. Send messages, share updates, add connections, and more.

For more information on the LinkedIn for BlackBerry devices app, see the [LinkedIn User Guide](#).

## joyn

With joyn, you can chat, call, send pictures, and share videos with your friends and contacts who aren't using a BlackBerry 10 device. If your wireless service provider supports joyn, the  icon appears beside your contacts who are using joyn.

## About joyn

Do you have friends and contacts who aren't using a BlackBerry 10 device? If so, you can chat, call, send pictures, and share videos with these contacts using joyn. If your wireless service provider supports joyn, within the Contacts app or the Phone app, the  icon appears beside contacts who are using joyn, so that you can easily find other users.

joyn for BlackBerry 10 might not be available on your device, depending on your wireless service provider.

For information about fees or conditions that might apply when using this application, contact your wireless service provider.

## Start a joyn chat

1. In the Contacts app, or in the contact details view, tap  The **joyn icon** beside a contact's name.
2. Do any of the following:
  - Type your message.
  - Tap an emoticon.
  - To attach a picture or file, tap  The **Attach icon**
3. Tap **Send**.

**Tip:** You can find, start, and reply to your joyn chats in the BlackBerry Hub.

## Invite other joyn contacts to a chat

Have something you need to discuss with a group? You can chat with more than one person to help make decisions faster and keep everyone informed.

1. At the bottom of a joyn chat, tap **The More actions icon** > **Create Group**.
2. Tap + to add another contact. Repeat this step for each contact you want to add.
3. If needed, type a chat subject.
4. Type your message.
5. Tap **Send**.

## Delete a joyn chat

On a chat screen, tap **The more actions icon** > **The Delete icon**.

## Call a joyn contact

1. In the Phone app, tap **The Contacts icon**.
2. Tap **The joyn icon** beside the contact you want to call.
3. If you have multiple phone numbers for a joyn contact, tap the number that you want to call.

**Tip:** During the call, tap **The joyn icon** to start a chat or a video share, or share a file.

## Start a joyn video share

Before you can share a video or start chatting over video, you need to call a joyn contact. The contact must have a device that supports video.

During a call, in the Phone app, tap **The joyn icon**.

**Tip:** During the video share, tap **The joyn icon** to start a chat or share a file.

## Send a file to a joyn contact

You can send different types of files to joyn contacts, including pictures, videos, and documents.

1. During a one-on-one joyn chat or a phone call, tap **The Attach icon** and select a picture or file.
2. Tap **Send**.

## Block a joyn contact

If you block a joyn contact, you won't receive any messages from that contact and file transfers are declined automatically. Messages are filtered to the Blocked Messages folder in the joyn app, and read notifications are turned off.

1. In the BlackBerry Hub, tap **The more actions icon** > **The Settings icon**.
2. Tap **joyn**.
3. Tap **Blocked users**.
4. Type the phone number or name of the joyn contact you want to block.

To unblock a contact, tap **Unblock** beside the contact's name.

## Turn on joyn while roaming

Check with your wireless service provider to find out what roaming fees or charges might apply.

If you're travelling, you can keep using joyn while roaming.

1. In the BlackBerry Hub, tap **The more actions icon** > **The Settings icon**.
2. Tap **joyn**.
3. Set the **Enable joyn While Roaming** switch to **On**.

# Media

## Change the media volume

When music is playing, do any of the following:

- To increase the volume, press the **Volume Up** key on the right side of your BlackBerry device.
- To decrease the volume, press the **Volume Down** key on the right side of your device.
- To mute the volume, press the **Mute** key on the right side of your device. To turn off mute, press the **Mute** key again.
- To select the type of speaker to play your music on, tap **The More Actions icon** > **Audio**.

**Note:** Your media volume is separate from your notifications volume. Changing the volume while you listen to your music won't change the volume of your notifications.

## Supported audio and video file extensions, formats, and codecs

Depending on your BlackBerry device model and wireless network, some file extensions, formats, and codecs might not be supported.

File extension	Supported video codec(s)	Supported audio codec(s)
3GP	H.263, H.264, MPEG-4	AAC, AMR
3G2	H.263, H.264, MPEG-4	AAC, AMR, QCELP
ASF	WMV9	WMA
AVI	MJPEG, MPEG-4	MPEG-3
F4V	V6	Sorenson Spark
ISMV (fragmented MP4)	H.264, WMV9	AAC, WMA
M4V	H.263, H.264, MPEG-4	AAC, MPEG-3, PCM
MKV	H.264, MPEG-4	AAC, MPEG-3, PCM
MOV	H.263, H.264, MJPEG, MPEG-4	AAC, AMR, QCELP
MP4	H.263, H.264, MPEG-4	AAC, AMR

File extension	Supported video codec(s)	Supported audio codec(s)
MPEG	H.263, H.264, MPEG-4	AAC, MPEG-3, PCM
WMV	WMV 9	WMA
AAC	—	AAC
AMR	—	AMR
FLAC	—	FLAC, Vorbis
M4A	—	AAC
MIDI	—	MIDI
MKA	—	AAC, MP3, PCM
MP3	—	MPEG-3
OGG	—	FLAC, Vorbis
QCP	—	QCELP
SPMID	—	SP-MIDI
WAV	—	PCM, GSM
WMA	—	WMA 9, WMA 10

For information about media file extensions, formats, and codecs for your device, visit [www.blackberry.com/docs/smartphones](http://www.blackberry.com/docs/smartphones) and click **Smartphones > BlackBerry Smartphones > Supported media**.

## Troubleshooting: Media

### I can't open a media file

Make sure the file is in a format that your BlackBerry device supports.

# Camera

You can use the Camera on your BlackBerry device to take high-quality pictures and videos. You can change the capture and camera settings to capture that perfect moment, even in adverse conditions. Time Shift mode makes it easy to take group pictures in which everyone looks their best.

## Camera app at a glance

## Taking pictures and recording videos

### Take a picture

1. Make sure that **The camera icon** is selected.
  - To change what the camera focuses on, drag the focus box anywhere on the screen.
  - To zoom in or zoom out, slide your fingers apart or together on the screen. Zoom only works in Normal and Stabilization shooting modes.
2. Do any of the following:
  - To take one picture, tap anywhere on the screen.
  - To take continuous pictures when you have Burst shooting mode turned on, touch and hold the screen. The camera will stop taking pictures when you take your finger off of the screen.

**Tip:** To turn on grid lines, in the Camera app, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap **The Settings icon**. Set the **Display Grid Lines** switch to **On**.

### Record a video

1. Make sure that **The video camera icon** is selected.
2. To change what the video camera focuses on, drag the focus box anywhere on the screen.
3. To zoom out or zoom in, slide your fingers together or apart on the screen.
4. To start recording, tap anywhere on the screen.

To stop recording, tap the screen again.



## Turn on autofocus lock

You can use the autofocus lock on your BlackBerry device to take multiple pictures and videos without having to wait for the focus to adjust between takes.

When the focus box turns green, touch and hold inside of the focus box.

**The autofocus lock icon** appears in the focus box when autofocus is set.

To turn off autofocus, drag the focus box anywhere on the screen or tap **The autofocus lock icon** inside of the focus box.

## Switch between the camera, the video camera, and Time Shift mode

In the Camera app, you can take pictures and record videos using the camera, video camera, and Time Shift capture modes.

1. Tap your current capture mode: **The camera icon**, **The video camera icon**, or **The Time Shift icon**.
2. Tap the capture mode that you want to use.

## Access the Camera app from the Lock screen

On the **Lock** screen, touch and hold **Camera**.

## Peek at the last picture or video that you took

You can peek at the last picture that you took or the video that you recorded to see if you captured what you wanted.

1. Touch and hold the thumbnail at the bottom of the screen.
2. Slide your finger up to expand the thumbnail.
  - To return to the Camera app, lift your finger from the screen.
  - To delete the picture or video, slide your finger to the right on to **The delete icon**.
  - To share the picture or video, slide your finger to the right on to **The share icon**.

## Using Time Shift mode

Time Shift mode lets you take a bunch of photos at once so that you can pick the best one of the set. Did someone blink in every shot, or cough just as you took the picture? You can fix that by swapping in different expressions for any person until everybody is picture perfect.

## Take the best picture possible using Time Shift mode

1. Make sure **the Time Shift icon** is selected.
2. Take a picture and keep the camera steady until the picture appears.
3. Move the slider at the bottom of the screen back and forth until you find the best picture.
4. Tap **The Save icon**.

## Replace a person's expression using Time Shift mode

1. Make sure **Time Shift mode** is selected.
2. Take a picture.
3. Drag the slider at the bottom of the screen back and forth until you find the best picture.
4. Tap a recognized face.
5. Use the dial to browse the available expressions.
6. Tap anywhere on the screen.
7. Tap **Save**.

## Change the capture settings

You can change the scene mode, the shooting mode, choose whether you use your flash, switch between the front camera and back camera, and more.

1. Tap **the more actions icon**.
2. Tap the setting that you want to change.

To return to Normal mode, tap the mode icon in the upper-left corner of the camera screen.

## Shooting modes

Shooting modes change the way that the camera takes pictures and records videos. For example, you can use Burst mode to take multiple pictures quickly.

**Note:** Shooting modes don't apply to the Time Shift mode.


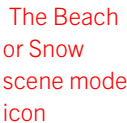
Icon	Description
<b>The Normal mode icon.</b>	<b>Normal</b>  This mode is available for the camera and the video camera. Normal mode acts the most like a regular camera.

Icon	Description
	or video camera and takes a single picture or video at a time.
The Stabilization mode icon.	<b>Stabilization</b> This mode is available for the camera and video camera. Stabilization mode can reduce the blurriness caused by camera movement when taking pictures and recording videos.
The Burst mode icon.	<b>Burst</b> This mode is available for the camera. Burst mode allows you to take multiple pictures quickly. This is a good shooting mode to use when taking pictures of fast-moving scenes or subjects.
The HDR mode icon.	<b>HDR</b> This mode, also known as High Dynamic Range mode, is available for the camera. HDR mode combines multiple pictures together and can capture the contrast between the light and dark areas of a scene.

## Scene modes


Scene modes are designed to improve the quality of the picture or video by changing settings, such as contrast, brightness, and so on.

Icon	Description
The Auto scene mode icon	<b>Auto</b> This is the most common mode. It's available for the camera, video camera, and Time Shift mode. Use this mode to capture a wide variety of everyday scenes.
The Action scene mode icon	<b>Action</b> This mode is available for the camera and Time Shift mode. This mode can help to take pictures of fast-moving objects. Try this mode when capturing pictures of sports or children.
The Whiteboard scene mode icon	<b>Whiteboard</b> This mode is available for the camera and Time Shift mode. This mode can help to take pictures of whiteboards by improving the contrast between the whiteboard and any writing on the board.

Icon	Description
 The Night scene mode icon	<b>Night</b> This mode is available for the camera, video camera, and Time Shift mode. This mode is useful when taking pictures and videos in areas with low light.
 The Beach or Snow scene mode icon	<b>Beach or Snow</b> This mode is available for the camera, video camera, and Time Shift mode. This mode can help to compensate for the light levels of the bright sand or snow in a picture or video.

## Change the camera settings

You can change your camera settings, such as turning on grid lines, setting where you want to save your pictures and videos to, and setting whether to geotag pictures.

1. In the Camera app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap  the **Settings icon**.

## Troubleshooting: Camera

If you are having trouble using the camera on your BlackBerry device, you can consult the troubleshooting topics included below.

### I can't turn on the flash or use the video light

Try the following actions:

- There might not be enough battery power left to use the flash or video light. Charge your BlackBerry device and try again.
- The flash might still be charging. Wait a moment and then try again.
- Make sure you're using the rear-facing camera.
- Make sure you aren't using Time Shift, Image Stabilization, or Burst modes. These modes don't use the flash.

### I can't take a picture or record a video

Try the following:

- Delete old media files to free up storage space and try again.
- Make sure that neither the camera nor the video camera is in use by another application. Close any application that might be using the cameras, and try again.

## I can't save pictures or videos to my media card

Try one of the following:

- Delete old media files to free up storage space and try again.
- Insert a different media card.
- In the File Manager app, browse to your media card. Make sure that the Camera folder exists and is available. If necessary, create a new folder called **Camera**.
- In the File Manager app, browse to your media card. Check if there are any other files called Camera. Delete or move any other files called **Camera** to a different folder.

## Pictures

You can use the Pictures app to organize the pictures you take with and add to your BlackBerry device. You can also edit, share, and display your pictures.

### Pictures app at a glance

### View your pictures

Pictures in the Pictures app on your BlackBerry device are organized into several views.

In the Pictures app, do any of the following:

- To see the pictures that you recently viewed or added, tap **The Recent icon**.
- To see all of the pictures that you took, downloaded, or uploaded to your device organized into albums, tap **The Albums icon**.
- To see your pictures organized by the date that you took or added them, from most recent to oldest, tap **The Date icon**.

### Zoom in to or out from a picture

With a picture open on the screen, do one of the following:

- Double tap where you want to zoom in.
- Slide your fingers together or apart to zoom in or out manually.

## Pan a picture

1. Zoom in to a picture.
2. Drag your finger around the screen.

## Doing more with your pictures and picture albums

You can do more with your pictures and picture albums such as view them as a slideshow, delete them, send or share them with friends, and so on. You can also view properties of your pictures and picture albums, including size, name, and date taken. You can see the available options by tapping **More** or by touching and holding an album and then tapping **More**.

## Edit a picture

The picture editor offers tools for you to use to edit and play with your pictures.

1. Open the picture that you want to edit.
2. Tap **The edit icon**.
- 3.

## Share a picture

You can share pictures with friends, family, contacts, meeting participants, Twitter, and so on, making sure that everyone experiences the special moments with you.

1. Open the picture that you want to share.
2. To edit the picture before you send it, tap **The edit icon**.
3. Edit the picture.
4. Tap **Save**.
5. Tap **The Share icon**.

## Take a screen shot of your device

To take a screen capture of your BlackBerry device, press the **Volume Up** key and the **Volume Down** key at the same time.

**Note:** If you have BlackBerry Balance installed on your device and your work space is unlocked, screen shots are saved in your work space.

# Organizing your pictures and albums

You can organize your pictures into albums using the folder structure in File Manager.

## Create an album

With albums, you can organize your pictures into folders based on events, people, dates, or any other category you can think of.

1. On the home screen, tap the **File Manager** icon.
2. Tap the folder that you want to create your album in.
3. Tap **The more actions icon** > **The Add Folder icon**.
4. Type a name for your album.

**Note:** You must move a picture into the new album before the album appears in the Pictures app.

**Tip:** To move an album into another folder, touch and hold the album that you want to move. Tap **The Move icon** > **The Back icon**. Tap the folder that you want to move the folder into. Tap **Move**.

## Move a picture to a different album

1. On the home screen, tap the **File Manager** icon.
2. Touch and hold the picture that you want to move.
3. Tap **The Move icon**.
4. Tap **The Back icon**.
5. Tap the album that you want to move the picture into.
6. Tap **Move**.

**Tip:** To move a picture into a different folder, touch and hold the picture that you want to move. Tap **Move** > **The Back icon**. Tap the folder that you want to move the picture into. Tap **Move**.

## Supported picture file extensions

Your BlackBerry device is designed to support the following picture file formats.

- BMP
- JPG
- GIF
- PNG
- TIF

- WBMP

For information about media file extensions and codecs for your device, visit [www.blackberry.com/docs/smartphones](http://www.blackberry.com/docs/smartphones) and click **Smartphones > BlackBerry Smartphones > Supported Media**.

## Music

You can use the Music app on your BlackBerry device to play and organize your music, and create playlists.

### Music app at a glance

### Playing your music

#### View your music

In the Music app, do any of the following:

- To see the music that you recently listened to, tap **The Recent icon**.
- To see your music library, tap **The Library icon**.

#### Tip:

You can do lots more with your music, including searching for songs, sharing songs with friends, and viewing music properties. You can see the available options by tapping **The More icon** or by touching and holding a song, artist, album, genre, or playlist and then tapping **The More icon**.

#### Play, pause, or skip a song

1. In the Music app, tap a song or album to listen to.
2. Tap **The more actions icon** > **The Now Playing icon**.
3. Tap **The pause icon**, **The previous icon**, or **The next icon**.

#### Shuffle your music

Tap **The Shuffle icon** to shuffle your selected music.

To stop shuffling your music, tap **The Shuffle icon** again.



**Tip:** After you shuffle your music, to see what's playing next, tap **The More icon** > **The Now Playing icon**. Tap the cover art.

## Repeat a song or your music list

To repeat your current music list, tap **The More icon** > **The Now Playing icon** > **The repeat icon**. Tap **The repeat icon** again to repeat the song that's currently playing.

## Creating playlists and organizing your music

On the Playlists screen, you can create and listen to your own playlists, or play the collections of songs that your BlackBerry device gathers for you. Inside each playlist and collection, you can see which artists and albums are featured.

### Create a playlist

1. In the Music app, tap **The Playlists icon** > **Create**.
  - To add songs individually to your playlist, beside the songs that you want to add, tap **The plus icon**.
  - To add all of the songs by an artist, tap **Artists**. Beside the artist that you want to add, tap **The plus icon**.
  - To add albums to your playlist, tap **Albums**. Beside the albums that you want to add, tap **The plus icon**.
2. To name your playlist, tap in the text field at the top of the screen and enter a name.
3. Tap **The save icon**.

### Add the music that's currently playing to a playlist

When a song or an album is playing, do one of the following:

- To add the song to a playlist, tap **The more actions icon** > **The add to playlist icon**.
- To add the album to a playlist, touch and hold the album name. Tap **The add to playlist icon**.

### Edit or rename a playlist

1. In the Music app, tap **The Playlist icon**.
2. Tap a playlist > **The edit icon**.
  - To change the name of the playlist, in the text field at the top of the screen, enter a new name.
  - To add music to the playlist, tap **The add songs icon**. Beside the songs, artists, and albums that you want to add, tap **The add to list icon**.
  - To remove a song from the playlist, beside the song that you want to remove, tap **The remove from list icon**.
  - To change the song order in the playlist, drag the song to where you want it to go in the playlist.
3. Tap **The save icon**.

## Organize your music on the Now Playing screen

You can organize your music without having to create a playlist. Suddenly feel the urge to listen to your favorite song next? Take advantage of the ability to add music to and change the order of your music on the Now Playing screen.

### Add music to the Now Playing screen

While another song is playing, touch and hold a song, album, or playlist.

- To play the selected item after the current song is done playing, tap **The Play Next icon**.
- To play the selected item after the current music list is done playing, tap **The Play Last icon**.

**Tip:** Tap **The Select More icon** to select multiple songs, albums, and playlists.

### Remove and order songs on the Now Playing screen

1. When a song or album is playing, tap **The more actions icon** > **Edit Order**.
  - To remove a song from the **Now Playing** screen, tap the **minus** icon next to the song that you want to remove.
  - To change the order that the songs play in, on the far right of the screen, touch and hold the **three lines** icon. Drag the song to where you want it to appear in the music list.
2. Tap **The Save icon**.

### Save your music on the Now Playing screen as a playlist

When a song or album is playing, tap **The more actions icon**.

- To save the music as a new playlist, tap **The Save as Playlist icon**.
- To add the music to an existing playlist, tap **The Add to Playlist icon**.

### Play your last music selection

If you set up a great music list on the Now Playing screen and then you close the Music app or start listening to a new album, you can quickly play your last Now Playing list.

1. In the Music app, tap **The Playlists screen icon**.
2. Under **Collections**, tap **Last Played**.

## Music shortcuts

Want to control your music faster and easier when you're in the Music app? Try some of the tips and shortcuts below.

- To quickly skip songs, turn on the Music Shortcuts. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap **Settings** **Settings** > **Main Volume**. Set the **Music Shortcuts** switch to **On**. To skip songs, press and hold the **Volume Up** key or **Volume Down** key.
- You can also control the volume of the song that you're listening to using the volume slider. If the volume slider isn't visible, on the **Now Playing** screen, tap the album's cover art.
- To add the song that's currently playing to a playlist, on the **Now Playing** screen, tap **The more icon** > **The add to playlist icon**.

## Troubleshooting: iMusic

### I can't open a media file

Make sure the file is in a format that your BlackBerry device supports.

## Videos

You can use the Videos app on your BlackBerry device to play, edit, organize, and display your videos.

## Videos app at a glance

### Watch your videos

In the Videos app, do any of the following:

- To see the videos that you downloaded or uploaded to your BlackBerry device organized into albums, tap **The Albums icon**.
- To see the videos that you recorded on your device organized by the date that you recorded them, tap **The Date view icon**.
- To see the videos that you recently watched, tap **The Recent icon**.

**Tip:** The unwatched indicator on a video thumbnail, **The Unwatched videos icon**, indicates that the video hasn't been watched yet.

## Play or pause a video

1. Open a video.
2. To show the video controls, tap the screen.
3. Tap **The play icon** or **The pause icon**.

## Change the video display size

You can change the display size of the video that you're watching on your screen.

1. To show the video controls, tap the screen.
2. Tap the icon in the upper right corner of the screen until the video is the size that you want.

## Doing more with your videos

You can do much more in the Videos app, such as delete videos, send or share videos with friends, and so on. You can also view the properties of your videos, including length, name, and date created. You can see the available options by tapping **More** or by touching and holding a video thumbnail and then tapping **More**.

## Edit a video

You can edit and improve the individual videos on your BlackBerry device. For example, you can crop and change the length of your video, as well as enhance the brightness, color, volume, and more.

1. Touch and hold a video thumbnail.
2. Tap **The edit icon**.

# Media sharing

You can use your BlackBerry device to share your media files in a variety of ways, including using Play on and DLNA Certified devices.

## About sharing media

You can wirelessly share the media files on your BlackBerry device with supported Wi-Fi CERTIFIED Miracast devices and DLNA Certified devices, such as computers, TVs, or other home entertainment equipment. You can share your media files wirelessly using one of the following methods:

- **Play on:** In the Music, Pictures, and Video apps, use the Play on feature to automatically play or view a file on a selected DLNA Certified device.
- **Media Sharing:** In the Media Sharing settings, if you selected a DLNA Certified device or a Miracast device to share media files with, the device that you selected will be able to wirelessly access your media files.

**Tip:** For more information about DLNA Certified devices, visit [www.dlna.org](http://www.dlna.org).

## Play or view your media file on a DLNA Certified device

Your DLNA Certified device must be a Digital Media Renderer.

You can wirelessly play or view media files saved on your BlackBerry device on supported DLNA Certified devices, such as computers, TVs, or other home entertainment equipment. Pictures and videos can also be viewed on supported HDMI displays and Wi-Fi CERTIFIED Miracast devices.

**Tip:** To find out if the device that you're trying to play or view a media file on is DLNA Certified, or for more information about DLNA Certified devices, visit [www.dlna.org](http://www.dlna.org).

1. Open a media file.
2. Tap **The more actions icon**.
3. Tap **The Play on icon**.
4. Select a device to play or view the media file on.

To play or view other media files while still connected to the DLNA Certified device, tap **The back icon** and select a media file.

To stop playing or viewing the media file on the DLNA Certified device, tap **The Exit icon**.

## Share your media files with DLNA Certified devices

- Your DLNA Certified device must be a Digital Media Player.
- Your BlackBerry device must be connected to the same Wi-Fi network as the device that you want to share the media files with.

You can use the Media Sharing options in your device settings to allow DLNA Certified devices and Wi-Fi CERTIFIED Miracast devices to wirelessly access your media files.

To find out if the device that you're trying to play or view a media file on is DLNA Certified, or for more information about DLNA Certified devices, visit [www.dlna.org](http://www.dlna.org).

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Media Sharing**.
  - To share your media files, turn on sharing for each type of media file that you want to share.
  - To grant access to devices so that they can access your media files, tap **Devices**. Select the checkbox beside each device that you want to grant access to.

# Games

Connect with friends while discovering new games with Games for BlackBerry 10. You can also add favorite games and customize your Games profile.

## Keyboard shortcuts: Games

Go to the next section in the setup wizard	Press <b>N</b>
Go to the previous section in the setup wizard	Press <b>P</b>
Go to the top of a list	Press <b>T</b>
Go to the bottom of a list	Press <b>B</b>
Scroll down a list by one screen length	Press <b>The space key</b> .
Scroll up a list by one screen length	Press <b>The shift key</b> and <b>The space key</b> .
Go to the next button or text entry field in the <b>Edit Profile</b> screen	Press <b>The enter key</b> .
Go to the previous button or text entry field in the <b>Edit Profile</b> screen	Press <b>The shift key</b> and <b>The delete key</b> .

## Change your Games profile

When you create your profile, the Games app fills in the required information with information from your BBM profile. Changing your profile information in the Games app doesn't affect your BBM profile.

In the Games app, tap **The more actions icon** > **The edit profile icon**.

- To change your profile picture tap **Choose a picture**. Scroll through the pictures on your BlackBerry device, and tap the one you want to use.
- To use the picture that is already associated with your BBM profile, tap **Use BBM picture**.
- To change your app name, tap the text field below **Display Name**.
- To change the email address that is associated with your account, tap the text field below **Email Address**.
- Set the Public profile switch to **On** or **Off**.

## Invite a friend to the Games app

You can add friends to the Games app to view the games they're playing, compare your high scores, and recommend games.

**Note:** The games you play and the awards you receive can only be viewed on your Games app timeline by your gaming friends; they won't appear anywhere else.

Do any of the following:

- In your timeline, tap a player.
- To invite your friends to the Games app using other ways, such as by email, looking up a username, or by inviting friends of your current friends, tap **The friends icon** > **The more actions icon**.

**Tip:** To remove a friend from the Games app, navigate to the friend's profile. Tap **The remove a friend icon**.

## Add a game

Use the Games app to discover your next favorite game that you can buy or download for free.

1. Do any of the following:
  - In your timeline, tap a game that interests you.
  - To browse through new games, popular games, and games that your friends are playing, tap **The games icon**.
2. Tap **The BlackBerry World icon** > **Download**.

## Add a game to your favorites

After you discover a game you love, you can mark it as a favorite for quick access.

1. In the Games app, on the home screen, tap **The action menu icon** > **The manage favorites icon**.
2. Tap **The favorite icon** next to a game.

To remove a game from your favorites, tap **The 'unfavorite' icon**.

## Recommend a game

You can recommend the games you love to your Games friends. Recommendations are sent as private messages, so that only the friends that you select can see the recommendations you send them.

1. Tap a game.
2. Tap **the recommend icon**.

3. Tap on a friend.

## Invite a Games friend to BBM

If you have a friend in the Games app who's not in your BBM contact list, you can invite that friend to BBM without having to leave the Games app.

1. In the Games app, do one of the following:
  - In your timeline, tap a friend.
  - On the home screen, tap **The friends icon**. Tap a friend.
2. Tap **The invite to BBM icon**.

## Start a BBM chat with a Games friend

You can start a BBM chat without leaving the Games app (for example, if you want to quickly comment on something in a game).

1. In your timeline or on the **The friends icon** screen, tap a friend.
2. Tap **The start a BBM chat icon**.

## Troubleshooting: Games

### Only my friends can see my profile

By default, your public profile is set to Off and only your friends can see your profile. You can change this setting to allow anyone to view your profile.

1. To edit your profile, tap on your display picture.
2. Set the **Public profile** switch to **On**.



# Settings

## Customize your device settings

Your BlackBerry device is designed to provide you with extensive customization and control. You can take it out of the box and get started, and you can tailor and optimize your device to your needs. Get acquainted with all the options and discover more about what your device can do.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings**.

## Customize your Quick Settings

The settings menu that you access by swiping down on the home screen is designed to show the settings you use most often. You can choose which settings appear, as well as their positions, so that you can quickly get to the settings that are most important to you. Quickly put your BlackBerry device into airplane mode or bedside mode, turn off your alarm, or turn on the flashlight!

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Quick Settings**.
  - To add or remove items from your quick settings, select or clear the checkboxes.
  - To change the positions of items in your quick settings, tap **The rearrange icon**. Touch and hold the item you want to move. Drag the item to a different location and release your finger. Tap **Save**.

**Tip:** If you have a lot of quick settings items, you can swipe right or left to see them all.

## Overview of device settings

Item	Description
<b>The Airplane Mode icon</b> Airplane Mode	Turn off all wireless connections
<b>The Connections icon</b> Networks and Connections	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Get quick access to airplane mode to turn off all your connections.</li><li>• Depending on your wireless service plan and device model, set up connections to the mobile network, Wi-Fi</li></ul>

Item	Description
	network, Bluetooth enabled devices, NFC, mobile hotspot, and set up Internet tethering.
<p><b>The Notifications icon</b></p> <p>Notifications</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Mute BlackBerry Keyboard sounds.</li> <li>• Turn on vibrate mode.</li> <li>• Turn off Instant Previews and LED notifications.</li> <li>• Customize audio and visual notifications for specific apps.</li> </ul>
<p><b>The Main Volume icon</b></p> <p>Main Volume</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Adjust the overall volume on your device.</li> <li>• Assign the volume keys.</li> <li>• Turn on audio boost for use with your headphones.</li> </ul>
<p><b>The Accounts icon</b></p> <p>Accounts</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Add or change social networking and email accounts.</li> <li>• You can also access advanced setup options such as IMAP and POP.</li> </ul>
<p><b>The Quick Settings icon</b></p> <p>Quick Settings</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Access settings you use frequently.</li> <li>• Access these settings at any time by sliding your finger down from the top of the screen.</li> </ul>
<p><b>The Display icon</b></p> <p>Display</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select wallpaper.</li> <li>• Change your font.</li> <li>• Adjust screen brightness.</li> <li>• Customize screen locking.</li> </ul>
<p><b>The Language and Input icon</b></p> <p>Language and Input</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Turn on or turn off text prediction, word substitution, and spell check.</li> <li>• Change the language, region settings, and measurement system.</li> </ul>
<p><b>The Voice Control icon</b></p> <p>Voice Control</p>	Turn on voice dictation and set voice recognition and feedback preferences.
<p><b>The BlackBerry Balance icon</b></p> <p>BlackBerry Balance (if available)</p>	Create or change a work space password. Delete only your work space and data from your device and leave your personal data intact.
<p><b>The BlackBerry Link icon</b></p> <p>BlackBerry Link</p>	Set up remote access to a computer for sharing documents and synchronizing media.
<p><b>The BlackBerry ID icon</b></p>	View your current BlackBerry ID information.

Item	Description
BlackBerry ID	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sign in to your BlackBerry ID account.</li> <li>• Change your BlackBerry ID password.</li> </ul>
<p><b>The BlackBerry Protect icon</b></p> <p>BlackBerry Protect (if available)</p>	Turn on BlackBerry Protect to help secure and locate your device if it's lost or stolen.
<p><b>The Security and Privacy icon</b></p> <p>Security and Privacy</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Create a device password.</li> <li>• Encrypt your device data.</li> <li>• Delete your device data.</li> <li>• Change permissions for downloaded apps.</li> <li>• Manage certificates.</li> <li>• Create a micro SIM card PIN.</li> </ul>
<p><b>The App Manager icon</b></p> <p>App Manager</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Change the default app used to open a specific file type.</li> <li>• Monitor apps that are using your device's memory.</li> </ul>
<p><b>The Media Sharing icon</b></p> <p>Media Sharing (if available)</p>	Connect to a device to wirelessly share media content.
<p><b>The Date and Time icon</b></p> <p>Date and Time</p>	Change the time zone, time, and date.
<p><b>The Software Updates icon</b></p> <p>Software Updates</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• View the current software version running on your device.</li> <li>• Check for software updates.</li> </ul> <p>and</p>
<p><b>The Search icon</b></p> <p>Search</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Clear search history.</li> <li>• Remove or prioritize apps that are searched.</li> <li>• Extend device search to include an Internet search.</li> </ul>
<p><b>The Storage and Access icon</b></p> <p>Storage and Access</p>	View available storage space and set up access to the files stored on your device, including USB connections, network identification, file sharing, Wi-Fi sharing, and password protection for sharing files.
<p><b>The Location Services icon</b></p> <p>Location Services</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Choose whether apps can use your location data.</li> <li>• Clear recent searches that you entered in the Maps application.</li> </ul>

Item	Description
<b>The Payment Options icon</b> Payment Options	Add payment accounts and set preferred payment methods.
<b>The Accessibility icon</b> Accessibility	Change magnification, hearing aid, and TTY settings.
<b>The About icon</b> About	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Find general information about your device, such as hardware information, network details, and storage space capacity.</li><li>Identify your device PIN, software version, and model name.</li><li>View your phone number and the name of your wireless service provider.</li><li>View or change the name for your device that appears if another device detects it over a Bluetooth or network connection.</li></ul>

# How do I update the software on my BlackBerry 10 device?

Software updates might not be available to you depending on your region and wireless service provider.

You should regularly create and save a device backup file on your computer, especially before you update any device software. Maintaining a current backup file on your computer might allow you to recover device data if your BlackBerry device is lost, stolen, or corrupted by an unforeseen issue.

- On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
- Tap **Image Settings > Software Updates**.
- Tap **Check for Updates**.

You can also update your device software using BlackBerry Link. For more information, see the Help documentation for BlackBerry Link.

## Turn on automatic updates for your device software

When a software update for your BlackBerry device is available and your device is connected to a Wi-Fi network, software updates are automatically downloaded and installed on your device. When this feature is turned on, you aren't notified when an update starts installing, but you may be asked to restart your device to complete the installation.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Software Updates**.
3. Tap **The Options icon**.
4. Set the **Automatic Updates** switch to **On**.

## Battery and power

Your BlackBerry device includes a number of features designed to help monitor your battery life and get the most out of your device. You can learn how to extend battery life, monitor which apps are using the most battery power, and charge your device in the most efficient way.

### Turn off your device

Press and hold the **Power/Lock** key on the top of your BlackBerry device.

BlackBerry device showing the Power/Lock key on the top of the device.

### Put your device in standby mode

When you put your BlackBerry device in standby mode, the device screen backlight turns off and the screen locks. Wireless connections and clock alarms aren't affected.

To wake up your device, swipe up from the bottom of the device screen.

### Restart or reset your device

If your BlackBerry device is running slower than usual or not responding, turning off and turning back on your device might help to solve the problem.

Do one of the following:

- To reset your device, press and hold the **Power/Lock** key for ten seconds.

### Charge your device

Before you start using your BlackBerry device, you should charge it because the battery that came with your device isn't fully charged.

Charge your device using the charger provided by BlackBerry in the box that your device came in. You can also charge your device using a USB cable connected to a computer, but charging might take longer.

**CAUTION:** Other chargers might not provide adequate power and might damage your device.

Hold the cable with the BlackBerry logo (  ) facing up, and connect the cable into the Unified Connector port on your device. Plug the charger into a power outlet.

BlackBerry device showing where you connect the charger to the Unified Connector port on the bottom of the device.

## Keeping your battery charged

Your BlackBerry device uses a lithium-ion battery. To maximize your use of this type of battery, when possible, do the following:

- Avoid using your device while it's charging to help it charge faster.
- Charge your device often, even when the battery charge isn't low.
- Avoid charging, using, or storing your device in extremely hot or cold places, such as on a vehicle dashboard.
- Avoid leaving your device turned off with a low battery power level for an extended period of time.
- If your device has a removable battery and you aren't using your device for more than a few days, partially charge the battery. You can then remove the battery and store it in a dry place at room temperature to conserve battery power.

## Battery and charging icons

The battery power level icons appear at the top of the home screen on your BlackBerry device.

Charging battery	The battery is charging.
Fully charged battery	The battery is fully charged.
Charger problem	The battery isn't charging because the power source isn't providing enough power. Use the charger that came with your BlackBerry device to charge the battery.
Low battery charge	The battery charge is low, and your wireless connections might turn off to conserve power. If the battery charge gets too low, your device might turn off. Save any work in progress and charge your device.
Battery error	There is a problem with the battery, and the battery might need to be replaced. Only use a battery that is approved by BlackBerry for your device model. To replace the battery, contact your service provider.

### Missing battery

The battery isn't connected. For assistance, contact your service provider.

## Check your battery power level

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > About**.
3. In the **Category** drop-down list, tap **Hardware**.
4. To view the percentage of remaining battery power, see the **Battery** section.

## Monitor the battery life, memory usage, CPU usage, and storage space on your device

You can check how much battery time and power you have remaining, how much device memory is being used, and how much storage space is available. You can also monitor which apps and services are using the most battery power, device memory, storage space, or CPU resources, and you can close or delete some apps to help save battery power or improve the device performance.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > App Manager > Device Monitor**.
3. To monitor different types of device statistics, at the top of the screen, tap **Battery**, **CPU**, **Memory**, or **Storage**.

**Tip:** On the Battery and CPU screens, you can view device and usage statistics from different time frames. To change the time frame for the statistics on the Battery or CPU screens, at the top of the screen, tap **Device Monitor**. Tap a time frame.

## View battery and usage stats for a specific app or service

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > App Manager > Device Monitor**.
3. Tap an app or service.

## Close or delete apps from the Device Monitor screen

If you notice that an open app is using a lot of battery power, device memory, or CPU resources, you can close it and end all processes associated with the app. You can also delete some apps permanently from the Device Monitor screen. Some apps must be installed and open at all times, so they can't be closed or deleted.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > App Manager > Device Monitor**.

3. Tap an app.
4. Do one of the following:
  - To close the app, tap **The Close icon**.
  - To permanently delete the app, tap **The Delete icon**.

## LED and battery notifications

A solid red LED can indicate that your BlackBerry device is turning on or restarting.

A flashing yellow LED can indicate that the battery power level is low and your device is charging.

A solid green LED can indicate that your device is plugged into a charger and that charging is complete.

## How can I extend battery life?

Battery life varies depending on how you use your BlackBerry device. To help battery power last longer, here are some considerations:

### Display settings icon Dim the screen

Prolong battery life by changing your device settings to dim the screen.

Do any of the following:

- To adjust the screen brightness, choose a dark-colored wallpaper, or change the screen lock timeout, on the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap **Image Settings > Display**.
- To automatically lock your device and dim the screen when it's in a BlackBerry case or holster, on the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap **The Settings icon Settings > Security and Privacy > Device Password > Lock Device When Holstered**.

### The volume settings icon Decrease volume

Do any of the following:

- To decrease the device volume, use the volume keys on the right side of your device.
- To adjust other volume settings such as application volume or notifications, on the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap **Image Settings > System Volume or Notifications**.
- To adjust other volume settings, on the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.




## The app icon Close apps

Increase how long a single charge lasts by closing any apps or features that you finished using so that they aren't continuously running in the background. Some features consume more battery power than others. Close or turn off these apps when you don't use them: The camera, the BlackBerry Browser, Voice Control, GPS, and Bluetooth technology.

## Connections settings icon Turn off connections

If your device is out of a wireless coverage area, turn off the connection so that your device doesn't search for a network signal continuously.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap  **Settings** > **Network and Connections**.

## The software updates settings icon Update your software

You can often gain a boost in power savings by using the latest version of the BlackBerry 10 OS. If a software update is available for your device, a notification appears in the BlackBerry Hub.

## The media card icon Use a media card

Reduce power usage by keeping less data on your device. Save data to a media card instead of your device storage space.

## The camera icon Turn off the flash

Conserve more power by turning off the flash when taking pictures.

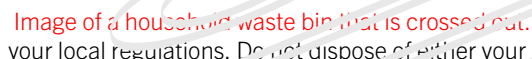
**Tip:** Like most electronic devices, your device battery drains less quickly if you keep it out of the sun and other hot places, keep the contacts clean, and charge it regularly. Avoid leaving your device turned off with a low battery power level for an extended time.

# Device and battery safety

You should only use the battery that BlackBerry specifies for use with your particular BlackBerry device model. If you use any other battery, you might invalidate any warranty provided with your device.

**CAUTION:** There is a risk of explosion if the battery is replaced with an incorrect battery type. Do not attempt to replace your non-removable battery. Only qualified service personnel should perform repairs or battery replacements to your device.

## Device and battery disposal

 Please recycle your BlackBerry device and battery in accordance with your local regulations. Do not dispose of either your device or battery in a fire. Your device or battery should not be placed in household waste bins.

For information about returning your device to BlackBerry for recycling and safe disposal, from a browser on your computer visit [www.blackberry.com/recycling](http://www.blackberry.com/recycling). The recycling and trade-in program is available only in certain areas.


## BlackBerry and environmental sustainability

BlackBerry is committed to reducing the environmental impact of BlackBerry products. To learn more about the sustainability efforts at BlackBerry, visit [http://www.rim.com/company/corporate-responsibility/product\\_sustainability.shtml](http://www.rim.com/company/corporate-responsibility/product_sustainability.shtml).

## View the safety, warranty, and privacy information for your device

To view the *Privacy Policy*, your BlackBerry device must be connected to the Internet.

Take a moment to review the license agreement, limited warranty, safety information, and privacy policy for your device. These documents are available from your device settings screen. They contain important information about terms and conditions of use, battery and other important safety precautions, and warranty coverage.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap  **Settings** > **About**.
3. In the **Category** drop-down list, tap **Legal**.
4. Tap a link.

## Connections

Connect your BlackBerry device to a mobile network or Wi-Fi network to browse websites, check your messages, use location services, and much more. You can also connect your device to a mobile hotspot in a public place, pair your device with your car using Bluetooth technology, or use Internet tethering to connect to other Wi-Fi-enabled devices. NFC lets you share files easily between devices.

## Check which wireless networks your device connects to

Your BlackBerry device won't necessarily connect to every type of network that's listed on your device. Your device is capable of connecting to all the networks listed, but actually connecting to each type of network also depends on your wireless service plan. For more information about the wireless networks that your device connects to, see the *Safety and Product Information* document for your device.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > About**.
3. In the **Category** drop-down list at the top of the screen, tap **Network**.

## Give your device a nickname

You can change the name of your BlackBerry device as it appears to other devices. This nickname is helpful when you share media files wirelessly or connect using Bluetooth technology.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > About**.
3. In the **Device Name** field, enter the new name for your device.

## Wireless connections icons

The following icons might appear in the upper-right corner of the home screen to indicate the wireless coverage level that your BlackBerry device currently has.

### Image of mobile network signal

The number of solid bars indicates the strength of the mobile network signal. If the signal is weak, your device might use more power to try to maintain the connection.

Image of 4G LTE data icon Image of 4G data icon Image of 3G data icon Image of 2G data icon Image of 1x data icon Image of HSDPA plus data icon Image of HSDPA data icon Image of GPRS data icon Image of EDGE data icon

Your device is connected to the network type shown and can access all of the features of your mobile network plan.

Image of 4G no data icon Image of 3G no data icon Image of 2G no data icon Image of 1x no data icon Image of HSDPA plus no data icon Image of HSDPA no data icon Image of GPRS no data icon Image of EDGE no data icon

Your device is connected to the network type shown but the network functionality is limited. You're likely able to make a phone call, but not able to access the Internet or view email messages.

Image of no mobile network coverage icon	You have no mobile network coverage.
Image of GSM roaming icon Image of CDMA roaming icon	Your device is roaming. Extra charges might apply.
Image of BlackBerry icon	You are connected to the BlackBerry Infrastructure.
Image of Wi-Fi signal strength icon	The number of solid waves indicates the strength of the Wi-Fi signal. If the signal is weak, your device might use more power to try to maintain the connection.
Image of VPN connection icon	Your device is connected to a VPN.
Image of airplane mode icon	Your device is in airplane mode and all of your wireless network connections are off. You can turn on Wi-Fi or Bluetooth technology, but not your connection to the mobile network.
Image of SIM card error icon	There is an error with your SIM card. For information on what the error is, on the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap <b>The settings icon Settings &gt; Networks and Connections &gt; Mobile Network</b> .
Image of emergency calls only icon	You can only make emergency calls.

The following icons appear in the upper left corner of the home screen if your device is connected or trying to connect to another device using Mobile Hotspot mode, Internet tethering, Bluetooth technology, or NFC.

The NFC feature might not be available, depending on your wireless service provider, your administrator's settings, and your BlackBerry device model.

Image of Mobile Hotspot icon	Mobile Hotspot mode is on. If the icon is solid, Mobile Hotspot is connected.
Image of Internet tethering icon	Internet tethering is on. If the icon is solid, your device is connected to another device.
Image of Bluetooth icon	Bluetooth technology is on. If the icon is solid, Bluetooth technology is connected.
Image of NFC icon	NFC is on.

## Choosing a connection

Your BlackBerry device is capable of a wide range of connections, to increase what you can do with your device and how it interacts with other devices. Take a look at the list of connections to learn about the different types of connections, some tips for when to use each connection, and maybe learn a few things you didn't know you could do.

## Network connections

### Mobile network

A mobile network connection allows your BlackBerry device to make calls and, if you have a data plan, use data services such as Internet browsing. In some locations, such as in a hospital or on an airplane, you need to turn off your mobile network connection, but usually you can just leave your mobile network connection on.

### Wi-Fi

A Wi-Fi network connection is another way to get data services on your device, but unlike using the mobile network, using Wi-Fi doesn't add charges to your data plan. Your device is designed to try to use saved Wi-Fi networks before it tries to use the mobile network for basic data functions such as using the Internet or downloading apps. You can leave Wi-Fi on so that as soon as you're in range of a saved Wi-Fi network, your device connects to it automatically, but remember that if you leave Wi-Fi on all the time your battery can drain faster.

## Connections between devices

### USB

You can use a USB cable to create a two-way connection between your BlackBerry device and your computer. When you connect your device to your computer using a USB cable, your device appears on your computer as a removable storage device. Depending on the functionality of your computer, you can usually use a USB connection to drag files between your computer and your device.

You can use a micro USB on-the-go to USB 2.0 adapter to connect your device to a keyboard, mouse, gamepad, external storage drive, or other USB device. You can use the File Manager app to view files on your external storage drive.

### Wi-Fi Direct connection

When you connect your BlackBerry device to other devices using a Wi-Fi Direct connection, you can perform actions such as sharing a document without needing an Internet connection. Because a Wi-Fi Direct connection creates a network, you can connect to multiple devices at the same time.

### Wi-Fi CERTIFIED Miracast connection

Miracast allows you to show what's on the screen of your BlackBerry device on another device such as a TV or computer monitor. In most cases you'll need to connect through a Miracast adapter that plugs into the device's HDMI connector or you can connect using a wireless display adapter.

### Bluetooth technology

Bluetooth wireless technology allows you to create a direct connection between your BlackBerry device and another Bluetooth-enabled device. Although you can transfer files over a Bluetooth connection, because of its ability to stream content, Bluetooth connections are more commonly used for actions such as playing the music on your BlackBerry device through a separate speaker or making calls on a headset that is using your BlackBerry device's mobile network connection.

### NFC

NFC is a short-range wireless technology that's used for quickly creating connections between your BlackBerry device and other NFC-enabled devices or NFC tags. With NFC you don't need to enter pairing information to make a connection, so it's useful for on-the-go actions such as transferring contact cards with people you meet, or grabbing information from a poster that contains an NFC tag. Depending on your wireless service provider and the applications you have installed on your BlackBerry device, NFC can also be used to turn your device into a digital wallet to allow you to do things such as make payments with your BlackBerry device.

## Shared Internet connections

You can use your BlackBerry device's connection to the mobile network to allow other devices to access the Internet. This functionality is particularly useful if you want to browse the Internet on your laptop or Wi-Fi only tablet but you don't have access to a Wi-Fi network.

### Internet tethering

You can use Internet tethering when you only have one device that you want to connect to the Internet through your BlackBerry device's mobile network connection. You can connect the device to your BlackBerry device using a USB cable or, if both devices are Bluetooth-enabled, you can use Bluetooth technology instead.

### Mobile Hotspot

You can use Mobile Hotspot mode to connect up to eight devices to your BlackBerry device. (The number of devices that you can connect depends on your wireless service provider.) Connecting your devices using Mobile Hotspot mode is like connecting to a Wi-Fi router; you can use the Wi-Fi connections on your devices, but you don't need access to a Wi-Fi network.

## VPN connections

You can connect your BlackBerry device to a virtual private network (VPN) over your mobile network or using a Wi-Fi connection. While your device is connected to the VPN, you can send data to and receive data from the private network across the public network.

## Turn on airplane mode

In some places, such as on an airplane or in a hospital, you need to turn off all the connections on your BlackBerry device. Airplane mode lets you quickly turn off your connections and, when you're done using airplane mode, turning off airplane mode restores the connections that were previously turned on.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings**.
3. Turn on the **Airplane Mode** switch.

## Mobile network

A mobile network connection allows your BlackBerry device to make calls and, if you have a data plan, use data services such as Internet browsing. In some locations, such as in a hospital or on an airplane, you might need to turn off your mobile network connection, but usually you can just leave your mobile network connection turned on.

In most cases your device automatically connects to the appropriate wireless network when you travel outside of your wireless service provider's coverage area. If you're not sure if your device is set up for roaming, or what roaming fees will apply, it's a good idea to check with your wireless service provider before you travel.

### Connect to the mobile network

To turn on your mobile network connection, airplane mode must be turned off.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings > Networks and Connections > Mobile Network**.
3. Turn on the **Mobile Network** switch.

To turn off your mobile network connection, turn off the **Mobile Network** switch.

### Change the APN settings for your default Internet connection

Your BlackBerry device uses Access Point Name (APN) settings to open a data connection with your service provider's wireless network. Apps on your device that require Internet access can use this connection.

You might need to change your APN settings if you change your wireless service plan or if the default settings don't apply to your service provider. Depending on your service provider, you might not be able to change the APN settings.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings > Networks and Connections > Mobile Network**.
3. If the **Mobile Network** or **Data Services** switches are off, turn them on.
4. Tap **The APN icon**.
5. Complete the fields. If you don't have the required information, contact your service provider.

To reset the default APN settings, tap **The Reset Defaults icon**.

### Connect to your VPN automatically

You can set your BlackBerry device to automatically connect to a virtual private network (VPN) whenever you have mobile network coverage.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings > Networks and Connections > VPN**.

3. Tap **The VPN auto connect icon**.
4. In the **VPN Profile** drop-down list, tap the profile that you want to use. If no VPN profiles appear in the list, create your own or contact your administrator.
5. Turn on the **Connect over Mobile Network** switch.

## Roaming

In most cases your BlackBerry device automatically connects to the appropriate wireless network when you travel outside of your wireless service provider's coverage area. In some cases you must contact your provider to have your SIM card or device properly provisioned. If you're not sure if your device is set up for roaming, or what roaming fees will apply, it's a good idea to check with your wireless service provider before you travel.

## Switch wireless networks manually

Your BlackBerry device is designed to switch to an appropriate wireless network automatically when you travel, but you might need to try switching networks manually if you're having trouble connecting or if the network signal is weak.

To switch wireless networks manually, your wireless service plan must include this service and your device must be connected to a GSM or UMTS network.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Networks and Connections > Mobile Network**.
3. If the **Mobile Network** switch is off, turn it on.
4. In the **Network Selection Mode** drop-down list, tap **Manual**.
5. When your device finishes scanning for networks, tap a network.

## Turn off data services while roaming

Depending on your wireless service plan, you might be able to turn off data services (email messages, PIN messages, text messages with attachments, and browser services) on your BlackBerry device so that only the phone and basic text messaging are available. Turning off data services while roaming might prevent you from receiving additional roaming charges. For more information, contact your wireless service provider.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Networks and Connections > Mobile Network**.
3. If the **Mobile Network** switch is off, turn it on.
4. In the **Data services while roaming** drop-down list, tap **Off or Prompt**.

## Troubleshooting: Mobile network

### I can't connect to the mobile network

Try the following solutions:



- Check that airplane mode is off. If airplane mode is on, the option to turn on the mobile network is unavailable. To turn off airplane mode, on the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap **Image Settings**. Turn off the **Airplane Mode** switch.
- Check that the connection to the wireless network is on. To check your connection, on the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap **Image Settings > Networks and Connections > Mobile Network**. Check that the **Mobile Network** switch is on.
- Check that your BlackBerry device is connected to your wireless service provider's network. If you switched wireless networks manually, your device remains connected to that wireless network until you select your wireless service provider's network again.
- If your device uses a SIM card, verify that it is correctly inserted into your device.
- If your device normally connects to a CDMA network and your device supports international roaming, check that your device is in roaming mode and that your SIM card is correctly inserted into your device.

## Wi-Fi connections

A Wi-Fi network connection is one way to get data services on your BlackBerry device, but unlike using the mobile network, using Wi-Fi doesn't add charges to your data plan. Your device is designed to try to use saved Wi-Fi networks before it tries to use the mobile network for basic data functions such as using the Internet or downloading apps. You can leave Wi-Fi turned on so that when you're in range of a saved Wi-Fi network, your device can connect to it automatically.

### Connect to a Wi-Fi network

When you connect to a Wi-Fi network, your BlackBerry device saves the network information. The next time you're within range of the saved Wi-Fi network, if Wi-Fi is turned on, your device connects automatically.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Networks and Connections > Wi-Fi**.
3. If the **Wi-Fi** switch is off, turn it on.
4. Tap a network.
  - If the screen requesting a password appears, enter the password for the Wi-Fi network. Tap **Connect**.
  - If you have access to the Wi-Fi router and you want to use Wi-Fi Protected Setup, tap **The Wi-Fi Protected Setup icon**. Complete the instructions on the device screen.
5. Tap **Connect**.

**Tip:** The next time you want to connect to a saved Wi-Fi network, if the network is within range of your device, on the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap **The Wi-Fi icon**.

### Manually connect to a Wi-Fi network

If you want to connect to a hidden Wi-Fi network, or you're having trouble automatically connecting, you can connect manually.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Networks and Connections > Wi-Fi > The Add network icon**.
3. In the **SSID** field, enter the name of the network.
4. Select the network's security type and specify any additional information. For what information you should specify, you can speak to your administrator or the person who manages the Wi-Fi network.
5. Tap **Connect**.

## Tutorial: Setting up Wi-Fi on a BlackBerry 10 device

This tutorial provides you with the opportunity to see and then practice setting up Wi-Fi on a BlackBerry 10 device.

**Note:** This tutorial is available in English only.

[Start the tutorial](#)

<http://docs.blackberry.com/tutorials/wifi/en>

## Change the priority of a saved Wi-Fi network

You can save multiple Wi-Fi network profiles on your BlackBerry device, such as your home Wi-Fi network, your work Wi-Fi network, and even profiles for the Wi-Fi network at a local sports arena or restaurant. Your device automatically tries to connect to a saved Wi-Fi network using the order that the profiles are listed on the **Saved Networks** screen. To connect more quickly, you can prioritize a Wi-Fi network by moving it higher in the list, so that your device tries to connect to it before other saved Wi-Fi networks.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Networks and Connections > Wi-Fi**.
3. Tap **The Saved icon**.
4. Tap **The Prioritize icon**.
5. Touch and hold the network profile that you want to move, and drag it up or down the list.
6. Tap **The Save icon**.

## Delete a saved Wi-Fi network

Your BlackBerry device can store up to 64 saved networks. If you have a lot of saved networks on your device and you don't use them all, you can delete some to tidy up your Saved Networks screen. Deleting saved networks that use a hidden SSID can also help preserve battery life.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Networks and Connections > Wi-Fi**.
3. Check that the **Wi-Fi** switch is on.
4. Tap **The Saved icon**.

5. Tap and hold the network that you want to delete.
6. Tap **The Delete icon**.

## Disable or re-enable a saved Wi-Fi network

If you want to stop your BlackBerry device from automatically connecting to a saved Wi-Fi network, but you don't want to delete the saved network, you can disable the network instead.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Networks and Connections > Wi-Fi**.
3. Check that the **Wi-Fi** switch is on.
4. Tap **The Saved icon**.
5. Tap a network.
  - To disable the network, turn off the **Enable Connections** switch.
  - To re-enable the network, turn on the **Enable Connections** switch.

## Wi-Fi network settings

Usually, you don't need to change your settings for a Wi-Fi network; however, you might need to change your settings if you have trouble connecting or if you need to connect manually.

The settings that are available for each Wi-Fi network depend on the type of network you're connecting to. To find out which settings to use, if you're connecting to a home network, see the information that came with your wireless router; if you're connecting to a work Wi-Fi network, talk to your administrator; if you're connecting to a hotspot, see the information provided about the hotspot or talk to an employee at the hotspot who might have details about how to connect.

### SSID

The SSID is the name that the network uses to identify itself. Usually, this field is automatically filled, but if the Wi-Fi network is hidden, you must enter the SSID to connect.

### Hidden SSID

Select this check box if you want your BlackBerry device to search for an SSID that is not being broadcast. A hidden Wi-Fi network isn't listed as an available network on the Wi-Fi screen.

### Security Type

Set the security type that the Wi-Fi network uses. Depending on the network you're trying to connect to, you might also see **Security Sub Type** and **Inner Link Security**.

### Password

If the Wi-Fi network is password protected, enter the password.

### CA Certificate

Set the root certificate that your device should use to verify that it's connecting to the correct Wi-Fi network. Depending on the type of network you're trying to connect to, you might also see **Client Certificate**.

## VPN Profiles

To use a VPN Profile when connecting to the network, select the profile that you want to use.

## Band Type

This field is set to Dual Band by default. If the Wi-Fi network is dual-band, your device tries to connect in the 5.0 GHz band unless the signal strength at the 2.4 GHz band is significantly stronger. If you want to connect to a dual-band network using one band only, choose the band you prefer.

## Auto Obtain IP

In most cases this switch should remain on, but if you need to manually specify an IP address for your device you can turn off this switch and the option to enter an IP address appears.

## Using Auto-IP

Select this check box if you want your device to assign itself an IP address automatically when it can't obtain one from the Wi-Fi network.

## Enable IPV6

Set whether the network uses the IPV6 protocol.

## Use Proxy

Turn on this switch if you want to connect to a proxy server. When you select this setting, additional settings appear. To find out what settings to use, see the information provided for the proxy server.

## Inter-Access Point Handover

If the network spans multiple access points, set whether your device should remain connected when you move from one access point to another.

# Connect to another device using Wi-Fi Direct

On the BlackBerry device that you want to connect to, on the Wi-Fi settings screen, the **Wi-Fi Direct** tab must be selected. To connect to another type of Wi-Fi CERTIFIED device, view the documentation for that device.

Wi-Fi Direct can allow your device to connect to other BlackBerry devices without using access points or a router so you can share files, such as media files, without an Internet connection.

**Note:** Although you can use Wi-Fi Direct to connect your device to other types of Wi-Fi CERTIFIED devices, apps on your device might not be able to share files with other devices.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Networks and Connections > Wi-Fi**.
3. If the **Wi-Fi** switch is off, turn on the switch.
4. Tap **Wi-Fi Direct**.
5. Tap the device you want to connect to.

To open the Wi-Fi Direct connection, the device you want to connect to must accept the invitation to connect.

## Connect to a Wi-Fi CERTIFIED Miracast device

You can wirelessly display the screen of your BlackBerry device on a Wi-Fi CERTIFIED Miracast device, such as your television or a boardroom projector.

**Note:** To display your screen on a device that isn't a Wi-Fi CERTIFIED Miracast device, you can use a wireless display adaptor or use an HDMI cable to connect your BlackBerry device to the other device.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Networks and Connections > Wi-Fi**.
3. If the **Wi-Fi** switch is off, turn on the switch.
4. Tap **Miracast > Share Screen**.
5. Tap the device that you want to display your screen on.

To stop displaying your screen, on the **Wi-Fi** screen, tap **Miracast > Disconnect**.

## Add a VPN profile

You need a Wi-Fi or VPN connection before you can add a new VPN profile.

A VPN profile contains the information that you need to log in to your organization's network over a VPN or Wi-Fi connection. You might have one or more VPN profiles on your BlackBerry device, depending on the options that your administrator sets for you.

If you use a work account that is supported by BlackBerry Enterprise Service 10, some VPN profiles might be automatically added and you don't have to manually add a VPN profile. If you don't see an option to add a VPN profile, then your administrator has turned off this type of connection.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Networks and Connections > VPN > The Add a profile icon**.
3. Complete the fields. If you don't have the required information, contact your administrator.
4. Tap **Save**.

## Troubleshooting: Wi-Fi

### Troubleshooting wizard: I can't connect to a Wi-Fi network

The troubleshooting wizard guides you through a series of questions and tasks that are intended to help you solve your Wi-Fi connection issue.

[Start the troubleshooting wizard](#)

<http://docs.blackberry.com/troubleshootingwizard/en>

**Note:** This troubleshooting wizard is available in English only.

## I can't connect to a Wi-Fi network

Start by checking for these basic issues:

- Check that you turned on the connection to the Wi-Fi network. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. Verify that the Wi-Fi icon appears blue.
- Check that you're in a Wi-Fi coverage area. If you're connecting to a home network, see if other wireless devices are able to connect. If other devices can't connect you might need to reset your router. If you're connecting to a work Wi-Fi network or a hotspot, talk to your administrator or an employee at the hotspot.
- Your connection might have timed out. Try connecting again.
- If the Wi-Fi network that you want doesn't appear on the Wi-Fi settings screen, it might be hidden. If you know the network name, try connecting to the Wi-Fi network manually.
- Check that Mobile Hotspot mode is off. If Mobile Hotspot mode is on, your device can't connect to a Wi-Fi network.

If none of the suggestions above solve your connection issue, try these more advanced troubleshooting options:

- Check that the time on your BlackBerry device is synchronized with the network time. If the times are different, it could prevent your device from connecting (for example, if connecting to the network requires you to have a certificate on your device, and the certificate has an expiration date).
- If you switched Wi-Fi networks manually, try switching to another Wi-Fi network.
- If your email account is a work account, your device might prevent connections to certain wireless access points. For more information, contact your administrator.

Still not connected? OK, try the following.

- Check that the settings for the Wi-Fi network are correct. To find out which settings to use, for a home network, refer to the information that came with your router; for a work Wi-Fi network, talk to your administrator; for a public hotspot, refer to any information provided for the hotspot or talk to an employee at the hotspot who might have details about how to connect.
- If you use the **Press WPS button on Router** setting in Wi-Fi Protected Setup, check that the Wi-Fi router uses Wi-Fi Protected Setup, and that it is set to send its profile. Verify that another device is not also attempting to connect at the same time, and that not more than one Wi-Fi router within range is set to send its profile. For more information, see the information that came with your router.
- If you use PEAP, EAP-TLS, EAP-FAST, or EAP-ITLS to connect to a Wi-Fi network, check that you installed the root certificate for the certificate authority server that created the certificate for the authentication server. The root certificate must be installed on your device before you can connect to the network. For more information, talk to your administrator.
- If you use EAP-TLS to connect to a Wi-Fi network, check that you installed your authentication certificate on your device. The authentication certificate must be installed on your device before you can connect to the network. For more information, talk to your administrator.
- If you need to contact a support representative, you can access diagnostic information by tapping the **advanced icon** on the **Wi-Fi** settings screen. To copy the log information to send to your support representative, in the **Diagnostic Information** drop-down list, tap **Logs**. Tap **Copy Logs**.

# Mobile Hotspot

When you use Mobile Hotspot mode your BlackBerry device creates a Wi-Fi network that other Wi-Fi enabled devices can connect to so that they can use the Internet through your mobile network connection.

## Sharing your Internet connection using Mobile Hotspot mode

This feature lets you connect your devices to the Internet anywhere that your BlackBerry device has a mobile network connection, but because this feature uses the mobile network, you might incur high data charges.

On some mobile networks, services such as email and BBM might not be available while Mobile Hotspot mode is on.

After you set up Mobile Hotspot mode on your BlackBerry device, connecting to the mobile hotspot with a Wi-Fi enabled device is a lot like connecting to any regular router.

Before you use Mobile Hotspot mode, read the latest safety and product information at [www.blackberry.com/docs/smartphones](http://www.blackberry.com/docs/smartphones).

## Use Mobile Hotspot mode to share your Internet connection

Before you turn on Mobile Hotspot mode, check that your BlackBerry device's connection to the mobile network is on.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Networks and Connections > Mobile Hotspot**.
3. If you've never used Mobile Hotspot mode before, complete the instructions on the screen. Read the screens carefully as they provide important information about the Mobile Hotspot feature. Remember your Mobile Hotspot password for later.
4. Turn on the **Mobile Hotspot** switch.
5. Tap <Tap to Connect icon>.
6. Do one of the following:
  - Tap the back of your device with the device you want to connect to your mobile hotspot.
  - Align the back of your device with an NFC tag to write your mobile hotspot connection information to the tag.

The device that you want to connect to your mobile hotspot connects like any other Wi-Fi network. The user of the device connecting to your mobile hotspot must know the name of your mobile hotspot and the password you set during the setup process.

## Find your Mobile Hotspot mode settings

You set most of the settings for your mobile hotspot the first time you turn on Mobile Hotspot mode. You can change these settings later when you aren't in an active mobile hotspot session.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.



2. Tap **Image Settings > Networks and Connections > Mobile Hotspot.**
3. Tap **The configure icon.**

## Disconnect a device from your mobile hotspot

After you disconnect a device from your mobile hotspot, if you want to connect the device again you must start a new session in Mobile Hotspot mode.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Networks and Connections > Mobile Hotspot.**
3. Tap the name of the device that you want to disconnect from your mobile hotspot.
4. Tap **The disconnect icon.**

## Troubleshooting: Mobile Hotspot mode

### I can't use my device as a mobile hotspot

- Check that you're connected to the mobile network. If **Mobile network signal** appears in the upper-right corner of the home screen, then the mobile network is on and connected.
- Check that your wireless service plan is set up to use Mobile Hotspot mode. If not, you need to change your service plan before Mobile Hotspot mode can work on your BlackBerry device.
- Your wireless service provider might not allow the use of Mobile Hotspot mode while roaming. For more information, check your service plan or contact your wireless service provider.
- If you're using your device for work, your organization might not allow the use of Mobile Hotspot mode. For more information, check with your administrator.
- While roaming, if your wireless service plan supports the use of Mobile Hotspot mode while roaming, on the **Mobile Network** settings screen, check that the **Data Services** switch is on and that the **Data services while roaming** drop-down list is set to **On**.

### I can't connect multiple devices to my mobile hotspot

Depending on your wireless service plan, you might not be able to connect multiple devices to your mobile hotspot, or the number of devices you can connect might be less than eight.

## Internet tethering

Internet tethering allows you to share your BlackBerry device's connection to the mobile network with one other device, such as a laptop or tablet, so that you can access the Internet on your other device anywhere that your BlackBerry device can connect to the mobile network. You can connect the device to your BlackBerry device using a USB cable or, if both devices are Bluetooth enabled, you can use Bluetooth technology instead.



## Sharing your mobile network connection using Internet tethering

Additional charges might apply for using Internet tethering. On some networks you can't use some services on your BlackBerry device, such as email and BlackBerry Messenger, while you use Internet tethering.

### Use Internet tethering to share your Internet connection

You can tether your BlackBerry device using either a USB cable or a Bluetooth connection.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Networks and Connections > Internet Tethering**.
3. If you've never used Internet tethering before, complete the instructions on the screen. Read the setup screens carefully as they provide important information about the Internet tethering feature.
4. In the **Connect using** drop-down list, tap **USB** or **Bluetooth**.
5. Turn on the **Internet Tethering** switch.
6. Connect your BlackBerry device to a laptop or tablet using a USB cable or Bluetooth connection.

## Troubleshooting: Internet tethering

### I can't use Internet tethering

- Check that your BlackBerry device is connected to the mobile network. If **Mobile network signal** appears in the upper-right corner of the home screen, then your device is connected to the mobile network.
- Check that your wireless service plan is set up to use Internet tethering. If not, you need to change your service plan before you can use Internet tethering.
- If you're using your device for work, your organization might not allow the use of Internet tethering. For more information, check with your administrator.
- While roaming, on the **Mobile Network** settings screen, check that the **Data Services** switch is on and that the **Data services while roaming** drop-down list is set to **On**.

## Bluetooth connections

Bluetooth wireless technology allows you to create a direct connection between your BlackBerry device and another Bluetooth enabled device. Bluetooth connections are commonly used for actions such as playing the music on your BlackBerry device through a separate speaker or making calls on a headset.

### Turn on Bluetooth technology

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Networks and Connections > Bluetooth**.

3. Turn on the **Bluetooth** switch.

When Bluetooth technology is on, **The Bluetooth icon** turns blue and **The Bluetooth icon** appears in the upper-left corner of the screen.

To turn off Bluetooth technology, tap **The Bluetooth icon** again.

## Pair and connect with a Bluetooth enabled device

Make sure that you turn on Bluetooth technology on the devices that you want to connect to.

Before you can connect your BlackBerry device with another Bluetooth enabled device, you must pair them.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Networks and Connections > Bluetooth**.
3. If the **Bluetooth** switch is off, turn it on.  
Your BlackBerry device automatically detects any discoverable devices within range.
4. If necessary, to scan again for nearby Bluetooth enabled devices, tap **Refresh**.
5. Do one of the following.
  - Tap **The Tap to Pair icon** and tap the back of your device with the device you want to connect to.
  - If the device that you want to connect to appears in the **Devices** list, tap the device name. Complete the instructions on the screen.
  - If the device doesn't appear in the **Devices** list, it might not be discoverable. Check that the device is discoverable then try again. If you don't know how to check that the device is discoverable, consult the documentation that came with the device.
  - If the device doesn't appear in the **Devices** list and you can't connect by making it discoverable, you might need to initiate pairing from the device. On your BlackBerry device, in the **Discoverable** drop-down list, tap **On** or **2 Minutes**. If necessary, enter your BlackBerry device password. Start the pairing process according to the documentation that came with the device.
  - Tap **The Tap to Pair icon** and align the back of your device with an NFC tag to write your Bluetooth connection information to the tag.

Your devices are now ready to share and communicate over the Bluetooth connection. Depending on the device you paired with, your devices are either connected or ready to connect when you initiate a Bluetooth related action such as sharing a file.

## Rename a paired or saved Bluetooth enabled device

You can change the name of a paired or saved Bluetooth enabled device as it appears on your BlackBerry device.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Networks and Connections > Bluetooth**.
3. If the **Bluetooth** switch is off, turn it on.
4. Touch and hold the device you want to rename.

1. Tap **The device details icon**.
2. In the **Device Name** field, enter the new name for the device.

## Disconnect from a paired Bluetooth enabled device

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Networks and Connections > Bluetooth**.
3. Touch and hold the device you want to disconnect.
4. Tap **The disconnected icon**.

## Delete a saved Bluetooth enabled device

If you have a long list of saved Bluetooth enabled devices on your BlackBerry device, you can delete the ones you no longer use to make it easier to find the ones that you do use.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Networks and Connections > Bluetooth**.
3. Tap and hold a device.
4. Tap **The Delete icon**.

## Pairing your device with a car

The My Car feature lets you connect your BlackBerry device with your car using Bluetooth technology. When your car and your device are connected, your device might display a customized home screen and lock screen. Also, special applications might appear in the Car Channel in BlackBerry World.

The first time your device detects a connection with a Bluetooth enabled car, your device prompts you to set the car as your car. After you pair the device with your car, the lock screen indicates that the device is connected to your car, and displays the features that are available.

## Turn off the My Car feature

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Networks and Connections > Bluetooth**.
3. Touch and hold your car's name.
4. Tap **Unset as My Car**.

## Set how Bluetooth enabled car kits access your messages

Some Bluetooth enabled car kits that support the Message Access Profile (MAP) can allow you to send and receive messages using voice commands.

For more information about using Bluetooth technology with your car, see the documentation that came with your car kit.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Networks and Connections > Bluetooth > The configure icon**.
  - To change how long your BlackBerry device tries to send messages to the car kit before it times out, adjust the **Message Download Timeout** slider.
  - To change which accounts your car kit can access, in the **Message Access Accounts** section, select or clear the checkbox beside each account.

## Let your car kit use your device's network credentials

To use some car kits, you need to turn on rSAP mode to allow your car kit to use your BlackBerry device's network credentials.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Networks and Connections > Bluetooth > The configure icon**.
3. Turn on the **rSAP Mode** switch.

## Automatically establish a Bluetooth connection when you turn on your device

You might like to keep your BlackBerry device always connected to a Bluetooth enabled device, such as a headset. You can set your BlackBerry device so that whenever you turn on your BlackBerry device it automatically reconnects to the last Bluetooth enabled device that it was connected to.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Networks and Connections > Bluetooth > The configure icon**.
3. Select the **Connect to the last device when turned on** checkbox.

## Supported Bluetooth profiles

Your BlackBerry device is a Bluetooth Smart Ready device, and supports the profiles that follow. If your device is associated with a work account, your administrator might disable use of a profile.

Profile	Description
Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP)	This profile allows you to stream audio files from your BlackBerry device to Bluetooth enabled devices that support stereo audio such as stereo headsets, speakers, and car kits.
Audio/Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP)	This profile allows you to use the buttons on a Bluetooth enabled headset to perform actions such as adjusting the

Profile	Description
	volume or playing the next or previous media file on your BlackBerry device.
Generic Audio/Video Distribution Profile (GAVDP)	This profile allows you to stream audio and video content from your BlackBerry device to Bluetooth enabled devices such as music players, stereo headphones, stereo speakers, laptops and desktop computers.
Generic Object Exchange Profile (GOEP)	This profile allows you to share files between your BlackBerry device and a Bluetooth enabled device.
Human Interface Device (HID)	This profile allows you to connect your BlackBerry device to Bluetooth enabled devices such as a keyboard or mouse.
Hands-Free Profile (HFP)	This profile allows you to connect your BlackBerry device to Bluetooth enabled headsets that support the Hands-Free profile. This profile can support voice dialing.
Message Access Profile (MAP)	This profile allows you to use a Bluetooth enabled car kit with your BlackBerry device to notify you of new messages. This profile can also help you read, delete, browse, compose, and send messages.
Object Push Profile (OPP)	This profile allows you to send files, such as pictures, contacts, or events, to a Bluetooth enabled device.
Personal Area Networking - User/Network Access Point (PAN - U/NAP)	This profile allows you to use your BlackBerry device as a modem when it's connected to a Bluetooth enabled computer.
Phonebook Access Profile (PBAP)	This profile allows you to use a Bluetooth enabled car kit to access contact information on your BlackBerry device, for example, to allow the car kit to place a call to a contact or display a contact name.
Micro SIM Access Profile (MSAP)	This profile allows you to connect your device to devices that run on a GSM network, such as a car phone, and extend SIM card functionality to the device.
Serial Port Profile (SPP)	This profile allows you to connect your device to Bluetooth enabled devices that support desktop connectivity, wireless bypass, and data transfer.
Device Identification Profile (DIP)	This profile allows Bluetooth enabled devices to access information about your BlackBerry device model to support plug and play features, such as automatically downloading required drivers.

## Troubleshooting: Bluetooth

### I can't pair with a Bluetooth enabled device

- Check that your BlackBerry device is compatible with the Bluetooth enabled device. For more information, see the documentation that came with the Bluetooth enabled device.
- If your Bluetooth enabled device requires a passkey and you don't know what the passkey is, check the documentation that came with your Bluetooth enabled device. Sometimes the passkey is set to **0000** until you change it. If you don't know what the passkey is, try **0000**.
- If your BlackBerry device doesn't detect the Bluetooth enabled device that you want to pair with, try making your BlackBerry device discoverable for a short period of time. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap **Image Settings > Networks and Connections > Bluetooth**. In the **Discoverable** drop-down list, tap **On** or **2 Minutes**. If necessary, enter your BlackBerry device password. Start the pairing process according to the documentation that came with the device.
- If the Bluetooth enabled device uses a battery, connect the device to a power source and then try again. Depending on the device, if the battery power level is too low the device might still operate but be unable to pair.
- If Mobile Hotspot mode is on, verify that you're trying to connect to a Bluetooth enabled device that uses the Handsfree, Serial Port, or Personal Area Network profiles.

### I keep losing the connection with my Bluetooth enabled car kit

- Check that your car kit is using the latest software version that is available. For more information about your car kit's software version, see the documentation that came with your car kit.
- Move your BlackBerry device to another location in your vehicle or turn your device to face another direction. The location of your device's antenna in relation to your car kit's Bluetooth antenna may affect the Bluetooth connection.

## NFC

NFC is a short-range wireless technology that's used for quickly creating connections between your BlackBerry device and other NFC-enabled devices or NFC tags. NFC is designed so you can easily share content and information without having to pair your BlackBerry device with another NFC compatible device. Depending on your wireless service provider and the applications you have installed on your device, there are many interesting things you can do using NFC, such as sharing a picture with a friend or paying for a purchase using your device.

### What is NFC?

The NFC feature might not be available, depending on your wireless service provider, your administrator's settings, and your BlackBerry device model.

NFC is a short-range wireless technology that's designed for easily sharing content and information without having to use pairing information.

Depending on the applications you have installed on your device and the NFC compatibility of other devices, there can be many interesting ways to use NFC. Here are a few possibilities:

- Simultaneously exchange contact cards with a new friend or business acquaintance.
- Pass a picture to your friend.
- Pay for your bus or subway ride.
- Pay for your morning coffee without taking out your wallet.
- Grab a coupon from a poster you see on the street.
- Gain access to your building when you get to work.
- Send a webpage you're viewing to a friend.
- Add a friend to your BBM contacts.
- Copy smart tag information to an NFC tag.

These are just a few of the things you can do with NFC. For more, play with NFC on your device, be creative, and see what you can do.

## Turn on NFC

The NFC feature might not be available, depending on your wireless service provider, your administrator's settings, and your BlackBerry device model.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Networks and Connections > NFC**.
3. Turn on the **NFC Connectivity** switch.

## Send a file using NFC

The NFC feature might not be available, depending on your wireless service provider, your administrator's settings, and your BlackBerry device model.

With NFC you can exchange many kinds of files, including pictures, music, contact info, and even webpages, between your BlackBerry device and other NFC-enabled devices.

1. Depending on how many files you want to send, on your BlackBerry device do any of the following:
  - To send a single file, find and open a file.
  - To send multiple files, find and highlight the files that you want to send. Tap **The share icon > NFC**.
2. Align the back of your BlackBerry device with an NFC-enabled device.
3. If necessary, tap **Send**.

**Tip:** In most cases, you can exchange files between two NFC-enabled BlackBerry devices simultaneously. This functionality is really handy if you're trying to exchange contact information saved in the Smart Tags app.

## Find your NFC settings

The NFC feature might not be available, depending on your wireless service provider, your administrator's settings, and your BlackBerry device model.

You can set whether your BlackBerry device prompts you before sending or receiving files. You can also set when your device can be used for doing things such as making credit card payments or providing access credentials to get into a building.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Networks and Connections > NFC**.

## Connect your device to a USB device

To connect your BlackBerry device to a USB device, you must have a micro USB on-the-go to USB 2.0 adapter.

You can access and save files on an external storage drive by using the File Manager app. You can also connect to external USB devices, such as a keyboard, mouse, or gamepad.

1. Insert the micro USB on-the-go to USB 2.0 adapter into the USB port on your device.
2. Connect the adapter to an external USB device.

## Connect your device to an HDMI display

1. Using an HDMI cable, connect your BlackBerry device to an HDMI display. The HDMI port is located on the left side of your device above the USB port.
2. Your device automatically detects the resolution of the HDMI display that your device is connected to. However, if you must change the resolution, on the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap **Image Settings > Display**. In the **HDMI Display Mode** drop-down list, tap the display mode that you want to use.

## BlackBerry Keyboard and typing

Communicate with the world by typing messages, email, and documents with the BlackBerry Keyboard. You can type efficiently by creating custom text shortcuts and turning on prediction, correction, and spell check. After you set up your keyboard preferences, learn how to cut, copy, and paste text, and delete words. If you turn on prediction, you can select word suggestions that appear while you type. You can also set up or change your display, typing, keyboard, and voice input languages.



## Keyboard and typing at a glance

There are several ways you can use the BlackBerry Keyboard to interact with your BlackBerry device. Use the At a Glance image to familiarize yourself with the keyboard capabilities.

## Home screen shortcuts

You can use your BlackBerry Keyboard with Instant Action to quickly perform a number of tasks when you type certain commands on the home screen. You can use home screen shortcuts to make a call, send email or text messages, start a BBM chat, update your Facebook status, post a tweet or a LinkedIn update, find a location in the Maps app, play music, or add notes and tasks to BlackBerry Remember.

### Make a call

1. On the home screen, type **call** and the name or number of the person that you want to call. For example, you can type **call Ian** or **call 5195550100**.
2. Beneath **Actions**, tap the action that you want to perform.

### Send an email

1. On the home screen, type **email** and the name or the contact that you want to send your email to. For example, you can type **email Tanya McPherson**.
2. Beneath **Actions**, tap the action that you want to perform.

### Send a text message

1. On the home screen, type **text** and the name or number of the person that you want to send a text message to. For example, you can type **text Blake** or **text 5195550100**.
2. Beneath **Actions**, tap the action that you want to perform.

### Start a BBM chat

1. On the home screen, type **BBM** and the name of the person that you want to start a chat with. For example, you can type **BBM Megan Ball**.
2. Beneath **Actions**, tap the action that you want to perform.

## Update your Facebook status

1. On the home screen, type **facebook** and your status update. For example, you can type **Facebook heading to the car show today.**
2. Beneath **Actions**, tap the action that you want to perform.

## Post a tweet

1. On the home screen, type **tweet** and your tweet. For example, you can type **tweet loving the weather lately.**
2. Beneath **Actions**, tap the action that you want to perform.

## Post a LinkedIn update

1. On the home screen, type **LinkedIn** and your update. For example, you can type **LinkedIn really enjoyed the training session today.**
2. Beneath **Actions**, tap the action that you want to perform.

## Add a note to BlackBerry Remember

1. On the home screen, type **note** and the contents of your note. For example, you can type **note pick up milk on the way home.**
2. Beneath **Actions**, tap the action that you want to perform.

## Add a task to BlackBerry Remember

1. On the home screen, type **task** and the contents of your task. For example, you can type **task prepare for the meeting tomorrow.**
2. Beneath **Actions**, tap the action that you want to perform.

## Find a location in the Maps app

1. On the home screen, type **Map** and type any of the following:
  - A favorite place that you've added to the Maps app. For example, you can type **Map home.**
  - A contact's name. For example, you can type **Map Megan Bell.**
  - A point of interest. For example, you can type **Map coffee shop**
  - An address. For example, you can type **Map 175 Columbia St. West, Waterloo, Ontario.**
  - A city name. For example, you can type **Map New York City**

2. Beneath **Actions**, tap the action that you want to perform.

## Play music

1. On the home screen, type **Play** and a song name, album name, artist, or playlist name. For example, type **Play classic rock playlist**.
2. Beneath **Actions**, tap the action that you want to perform.

## Alternative home screen shortcuts

Instead of typing an entire command on the home screen, in some instances, you can type an alternative command. Depending on your device language, alternative shortcuts might not be available.

Action	Alternative shortcuts
Make a call	Type the phone number, or type <b>phone</b> or <b>dial</b> , followed by the number.
Send an email	Type <b>mail</b> .
Send a text message	Type <b>sms</b> , <b>msg</b> , or <b>message</b> .
Update your Facebook status	Type <b>fb</b> .
Post a tweet	Type <b>tweet</b> or <b>tw</b> .
Post a LinkedIn update	Type <b>li</b> .
Add a note to BlackBerry Remember	Type <b>memo</b> .
Add a task to BlackBerry Remember	Type <b>todo</b> .

## Creating custom text shortcuts

Word substitution lets you create your own text shortcuts so that when you enter a shortcut your BlackBerry device replaces the shortcut with a full word or phrase.

**Tip:** Word substitution is sometimes known as autotext.

## Turn on word predictions

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** **Settings** > **Language and Input** > **Prediction and Correction**.
3. Set the **Show Predictions** switch to **On**.

## Add a new text shortcut

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** **Settings > Language and Input > Prediction and Correction > Word Substitution**.
3. Tap **Add Shortcut**.

## Clear the learned words list

The BlackBerry Keyboard learns words and phrasing based on your usage to predict the next word you write. You can clear the word list used for word suggestions with the following steps:

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** **Settings > Language and Input > Prediction and Correction**.
3. Tap **Clear Learned Words**.

**Note:** As you continue to type, the learned word list is regenerated unless you set the **Learn New Words** switch to **Off** on the **Prediction and Correction** screen.

## Change or delete a text shortcut

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** **Settings > Language and Input > Prediction and Correction > Word Substitution**.
3. In the **Substitution List** section, tap a word substitution entry.

## Typing on the Keyboard

### Type an accented character

The list of available accents depends on the active input language. If you set multiple input languages, the accents for the languages that can be predicted together appear for a letter. For example, when English, French, and German are set, because their alphabets are similar, you get accent options for all three languages.

1. On the BlackBerry Keyboard, press and hold the letter that you want to add the accent to.
2. When accented characters appear above the Keyboard, tap the accented character that you want to type.

## Type a symbol or number

1. On the lower right side of the BlackBerry Keyboard, press **Symbol icon**.
2. Tap the symbol or number that you want to type.

## Type an uppercase character

1. On the BlackBerry keyboard, press **The Right Shift key**.
2. Press a letter.

**Tip:** To turn on CAP lock, press **The Alt key** and **The Right Shift key**.

## Keyboard shortcuts: Typing

Some shortcuts might not be available depending on the typing input language that you use.

Undo an automatically corrected word	Press <b>The Delete key</b> twice.
Insert a period (.) in a text field	Press <b>The Space key</b> twice. The next letter is capitalized.
Insert an at sign (@) or a period (.) in an email address field	Press <b>The Space key</b> .
Capitalize a letter	Press and hold the letter key until the capitalized letter appears.
Turn on CAP lock	Press <b>The Alt key</b> and <b>The Right Shift key</b> . To turn off CAP lock, press <b>The Left Shift key</b> or <b>The Right Shift key</b> .
Type a symbol	Press <b>The Sym key</b> . Tap the symbol that appears on screen.
Type the alternate character on a key	Press <b>The Alt key</b> and the character key.
Type an accented or special character	Press and hold the letter key and tap the accented or special character you want.
Type a number in a text field	Press <b>The Alt key</b> and press the number key.
Type a number in a number field	Press the number key.
Turn on NUM lock	Press <b>The Alt key</b> and <b>The Left Shift key</b> . To turn off NUM lock, press <b>The Left Shift key</b> or <b>The Right Shift key</b> .

Highlight a line of text	Touch and hold the text. Move your finger up or down on the screen.
Highlight text character by character	Touch and hold the text. Move your finger left or right on the screen to select each character.
Cut highlighted text	Tap the highlighted text. Tap <b>Cut</b> .
Copy highlighted text	Tap the highlighted text. Tap <b>Copy</b> .
Paste text	Touch and hold where you want to paste the text.

## Type faster with automated assistance settings

You can change your typing settings to help you type faster on your BlackBerry Keyboard. Keyboard feedback provides an audible indication of your typing progress. A different tone is used for the **Alt**, **Left shift**, **Right shift**, **Delete**, and **Symbol** keys to differentiate these keys from alphabetical keys. In addition, you can change your settings so that your device automatically capitalizes new sentences or so that pressing **The space key** twice inserts a period.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** **Settings** > **Language and Input** > **Prediction and Correction**.
3. Tap the settings that you want to change.

## Cut, copy, and paste text

1. To highlight text, touch and hold the text.
2. To expand the text selection, do one of the following:
  - To select more published text such as in a browser or PDF file, move the cursor indicator handles to highlight the whole section of text.
  - To select more text in a text editor such as an email, place the cursor at the beginning of the text you want to select. Tap **The Shift icon** and drag the circle to highlight the whole section of text.
3. When the text editing menu appears, do one of the following:
  - To copy the text, tap the highlighted text. Tap **The Copy icon**.
  - To cut the text, tap the highlighted text. Tap **Cut**.
4. To paste the text, touch and hold the location where you want to paste the text and then release your finger. Tap **Paste**.

## Selecting word suggestions that appear while you type

Your BlackBerry device is designed to learn what you tend to say and where in a sentence you tend to say it. Your device uses this information to try to predict what word you might type next. When you pause your typing, suggested words are displayed above the BlackBerry keyboard. You can quickly select a suggested word by tapping it.

### Select a suggested word

To use a word that appears above the BlackBerry Keyboard, tap it to select it.

## Spell check

### Turn on spell check

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** **Settings** > **Language and input** > **Spell Check**
3. Set the **Spell Check** switch to **On**.

### Accept spelling suggestions

If spell check is turned on, spelling mistakes are underlined in red as you type.

Tap the underlined word.

- To accept a spelling suggestion, tap the suggested word.
- To add the word to your personal dictionary, tap **Add to Dictionary**.

### Change spell check settings

You can change spell check settings, such as whether to check the spelling of acronyms, whether to correct the casing of words, and so on.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** **Settings** > **Language and Input** > **Spell Check**
3. Tap the settings that you want to change.

## Edit your personal dictionary

When you use spell check you can add words that are marked as incorrect to a custom dictionary on your BlackBerry device so that spell check recognizes them as being correct. The words that you add to your personal dictionary can be edited at any time.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** **Settings** > **Language and Input** > **Spell Check** > **Edit Personal Dictionary**.
  - To add a new word to your personal dictionary, tap **Add New**.
  - To edit a word that's already in your personal dictionary, tap the word.
  - To delete a word from your personal dictionary, tap **Delete**. Tap **Delete** next to the word that you want to delete.

## Change your device's regional settings

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings** **Settings** > **Language and Input**.
3. In the **Region** drop-down list, tap the region that you want to use to set your device's date format, default currency, and number format.

## Change Keyboard, input, or typing settings

You can personalize your typing experience by changing the BlackBerry keyboard, input, or typing settings on your BlackBerry device.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** **Settings** > **Language and Input**.

## Language

If you speak more than one language, you can use the language settings to change your display, typing, voice input, or BlackBerry Keyboard language. You can also switch to another typing language while you type.

## Change your display language

The language that you've selected during initial setup of your BlackBerry device is your display language. The home screen, BlackBerry Hub and supported applications display content in this language.



1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** > **Language and Input**.
3. In the **Language** drop-down list, tap the language that you want to use.

## Change your input language

Your input language is the language in which you type documents, email messages, and text messages. You can select up to three languages that you want to be able to type in. The default language is the display language you chose.

**Tip:** If you need to switch input languages often, make sure your device settings detect your languages automatically. You can do this by turning on the **Language detection** switch on the **Input Languages** screen.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** > **Language and Input**.
3. Tap **Input Languages** > **Language switch icon**.
4. Select the checkbox beside the languages that you want to enable.

**Tip:** If you can't select the checkbox beside a language, you may already have three languages selected. Browse the full list of languages and clear a language that you no longer want to use. Then, select a new input language.

## Change your language while typing

If you previously set up more than one input language, you can quickly switch between those languages while you're typing.

1. Tap the text field.
2. Press **The Alt key** and **The Enter key**.
3. Tap the language that you want to type in.

The keyboard layout, such as QWERTY, QWERTZ, or AZERTY, also changes to the default layout for the language that you are typing in.

## Change your voice input language

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** > **Language and Input**.
3. Tap **Voice Dictation**.
4. In the **Language** drop-down list, tap the language you want to use.

# Keyboard Input Methods

An input method is a way to handle complex situations where typing goes beyond an alphabetical issue. In some cases, input methods are used to get a phonetic approximation of a word based on the keyboard you are using. Your device can then suggest a character or diacritic based on the sound you've chosen. In other cases, input methods provide gestures and key combinations for languages. There are some keyboard input methods that are common to all supported languages, such as word prediction and flick typing to select predictions or using the press-and-hold method to access accented characters. All keyboard input methods also support using the **sym** key to access symbols.

Your BlackBerry device can be used in many different languages, regardless of the default language you select. However, the differences between the languages you use may mean that you need specific tips and tricks to use your BlackBerry Keyboard with a language that is different than the default keyboard layout. For example, if you are using a language that has more characters in the alphabet than the language that your keyboard supports, you need to know how to access those additional characters.

## Typing in Other Languages

You can set up your BlackBerry device to recognize three different input languages when you type. As you type, your device makes predictions based on each of the languages. When you've got more than one typing language set up, you may need to consider the following:

- Some languages, such as Thai and Arabic, have more characters in the alphabet than there are keys on the keyboard. You need to use a keystroke combination to access the second or third character on a particular key. For information about how to access these types of characters, see the help for typing in that language.
- Different languages may have different keyboard layouts. For example, American English uses a QWERTY keyboard layout, but French uses an AZERTY keyboard layout. You need to adapt to the changed locations of some keys.
- Similar languages may have slightly different keyboard layouts. For example, many languages use a QWERTY keyboard layout; however, Danish, Spanish, and Romanian include different characters on the basic keyboard that are not included on other QWERTY keyboards.
- Some supported languages, such as Hebrew, Farsi, and Arabic, read right-to-left. If you change to one of these languages from a left-to-right language in the middle of a sentence, your device automatically places the characters you type on the left side of the cursor. When you want to change back to the left-to-right language, you'll need to move your cursor back to the right side of the text.

## Typing in Arabic or Farsi

The Arabic and Farsi keyboards support the following features:

- The Arabic language has more characters in the alphabet than there are keys on the keyboard. As a result, there are more than one native character on one physical key. You might need to use the keyboard mapping guide to determine how to access the second and third characters on each physical key.
- The Farsi language has a few characters that are different from the basic Arabic alphabet. These characters are listed on the keyboard mapping guide.

- Word prediction and flick typing (if you have this feature turned on)
- To type an uppercase character, you can press **Shift icon** and press a letter.
- To type an accented version of a character, press and hold the primary character. Then, select the accented character.
- To type a symbol, tap **sym**. To view more symbols, tap **sym** again.

## Typing additional characters in Arabic or Farsi

The following table shows how to type the Arabic and Farsi alphabet when there is more than one native character on each physical key.

Single Key Press	Double Key Press	Shift Key Press	Multi-tap
ص	ص	ض	ص ض
ث			
ق			
ف			ف
غ			
ع			
ه			
خ			
ح			
ج	ج (Farsi only)	ج (Farsi only)	ج
س	ش	س	س ش
ي		ی	ئ ی
ب	پ (Farsi only)	پ (Farsi only)	پ
ل			
ا		ا	ء ا آ
ت	ة	ة	ة
ن			
م			
ك	ک (Farsi only)	ک (Farsi only)	ک کی
ذ			
د			
ر			

و	ؤ	ؤ
ز	ژ (Farsi only)	ژ (Farsi only)
ط		
ط		

## Typing in Chinese

We support Chinese Pinyin, Bopomofo, Chinese handwriting, Chinese Pinyin (on 3x4 keypad), and Chinese stroke. I don't even know where to start documenting this part.

To type in Chinese you must familiarize yourself with the keyboard layout for Chinese characters. When typing in Chinese on a non-Chinese keyboard, you can use the phonetic sound of a character to get Chinese diacritics to appear as word predictions.

Funfact: Non-Latin UI lang that uses separate keyboard layout will automatically get basic US-EN QUERTY input

Special input methods to cover off

Supports press and hold for alternate characters

Can type in this language

Use SYM for symbols

## Typing in Cangjie

The typical Cangjie keyboard looks like this

Typically, using the Shift key when your language is set to Cangjie gives you a Latin alphabet based on the QWERTY layout.

The following table shows how to type the Cangjie alphabet when there is more than one native character on each physical key. NOTE TO SELF: WE MAYBE DON'T NEED THIS TABLE SINCE THER AREN'T MORE THAN ONE. SOLUTION: IMAGE, STATEMENT ABOUT SHIFT+PRESS, STATEMENT ABOUT EXPLORE.PRESS+HOLD.

Single key press	Shift+key press	Key press and hold
手	q	
田	w	
水		
口		
廿		

卜  
山  
戈  
人  
心  
日  
尸  
木  
火  
土  
竹  
十  
大  
中  
重  
難  
金  
女  
月  
弓  
一

## Typing in Czech

## Typing in Danish, Norwegian, Finnish, or Swedish

In some languages, there are more characters in the alphabet than keys on the keyboard. As a result, there may be more than one native character on one physical key. The goal of this topic is to help the user know how to access these additional characters.

Uses the basic QWERTY keyboard with the addition of Å, Æ and Ø (for Danish and Norwegian), and Ö and Ä (for Finnish and Swedish).

Supports press and hold for alternate characters, supports flick/prediction

Can type in this language

Use SYM for symbols

## Typing in Greek (Hellenic?)

To type in Greek you must familiarize yourself with the keyboard layout for Greek characters.

Funfact: Non-Latin UI lang that uses separate keyboard layout will automatically get basic US-EN QWERTY input

Supports press and hold for alternate characters, supports flick/prediction

Can type in this language

Use SYM for symbols

## Typing in Russian (Cyrillic?)

The Russian language keyboard and language supports the following features:

- Word prediction and flick typing (if you have this feature turned on).

To access additional characters on the Russian keyboard layout, you can use one of the following methods.

- To type an uppercase character, you can press **Shift icon** and press a letter.
- In Russian, T, I, P, L, M, or \$ are not a part of the primary keyboard layout. You can access these characters by double-clicking the primary letter.
- To type an accented version of a character, press and hold the primary character. Then, select the accented character.
- To type a symbol, tap **sym**. To view more symbols, tap **sym** again.

## Typing additional characters in Russian

The typical Russian keyboard looks like this: [Image of a keyboard with Cyrillic language layout](#)

You can use this image as a guide for the locations of Russian characters.

## Typing in Hebrew

Funfact: Non-Latin UI lang that uses separate keyboard layout will automatically get basic US-EN QWERTY input

Supports press and hold for alternate characters, supports flick/prediction

Can type in this language

Use SYM for symbols

## Typing in Hindi

To type in Hindi you must familiarize yourself with the keyboard layout for Hindi characters.

Funfact: Non-Latin UI lang that uses separate keyboard layout will automatically get basic US-EN QWERTY input

Supports press and hold for alternate characters, supports flick/prediction

Can type in this language

Use SYM for symbols

## Typing in Japanese

To type in Japanese you must familiarize yourself with the keyboard layout for Japanese characters.

Funfact: Non-Latin UI lang that uses separate keyboard layout will automatically get basic US-EN QWERTY input

Special input methods to cover off.

Supports press and hold for alternate characters

Can type in this language

Use SYM for symbols

## Typing in Latin-based languages

Many languages use the Latin alphabet; however, there are three keyboard layouts that use the Latin alphabet on your BlackBerry device. If you have set up more than one input, it is important to know that the keyboard layout may change.

The QWERTY keyboard layout is used by many languages; it is not confined to a single geographic area. Certain languages may have slight variations to the available keys or symbols, but the basic keyboard is the same. QWERTY keyboard layout is used for American English, European English, Czech, Danish, Dutch, Italian, Polish, Brazilian, Portuguese, Romanian, Spanish, Catalan, Galician, Basque, and Vietnamese input.

The QWERTZ keyboard layout is used for German, Czech, and Hungarian input.

The basic QWERTZ keyboard layout looks like this: [Image of the QWERTZ keyboard layout](#)

The basic QWERTZ keyboard layout looks like this: [Image of the QWERTZ keyboard layout](#)

The AZERTY keyboard layout is used for French input.

The QWERTY, QWERTZ, and AZERTY keyboard layouts using the Latin alphabets have different alternate characters depending on the language select. For example, in French, if you tap and hold the letter A, the prediction menu displays additional accented variations of the letter A. In Romanian, if you tap and hold the letter S, the prediction menu appears with Ș amongst the options. Experiment with the keyboard to reveal the keys that contain alternate characters.

## Typing in Latin-based languages

Many languages use the Latin alphabet; however, there are three keyboard layouts that use the Latin alphabet on your BlackBerry device. If you have set up more than one input, it is important to know that the keyboard layout may change.

The QWERTY keyboard layout is used by many languages; it is not confined to a single geographic area. Certain languages may have slight variations to the available keys or symbols, but the basic keyboard is the same. QWERTY keyboard layout is used for American English, European English, Czech, Danish, Dutch, Italian, Polish, Brazilian, Portuguese, Romanian, Spanish, Catalan, Galician, Basque, and Vietnamese input.

The basic QWERTY keyboard layout looks like this: [Image of the QWERTY keyboard layout](#)

The QWERTZ keyboard layout is used for German, Czech, and Hungarian input.

The basic QWERTZ keyboard layout looks like this: [Graphic\\_BB1030\\_Keyboard\\_Keypad\\_QWERTZ\\_Windermere](#)

The AZERTY keyboard layout is used for French input.

The basic AZERTY keyboard layout looks like this: [Image of the AZERTY keyboard layout](#)

The QWERTY, QWERTZ, and AZERTY keyboard layouts using the Latin alphabets have different alternate characters depending on the language select. For example, in French, if you tap and hold the letter A, the prediction menu displays additional accented variations of the letter A. In Romanian, if you tap and hold the letter S, the prediction menu appears with Ș amongst the options. Experiment with the keyboard to reveal the keys that contain alternate characters.



# Typing in Thai

In some languages, such as Thai, there are more characters in the alphabet than keys on the keyboard. As a result, more than one native character is available on each physical key.

Your BlackBerry device supports the following features using the Thai input methods:

- Press and hold for alternate accented characters.
- Flick-typing for predicted words.
- Using the **SYM** key to access symbols.

## PKB-Typing additional characters in Thai

The following table shows how to type the Thai alphabet when there is more than one native character on each physical key.

Single Key Press	Shift+Keypress	Press and Hold
ไ	า	
ำ	ก	
พ	ฦ	
ะ	บ	
อ	ค	
ี	ฦ	
ี	ฦ	
ว	ฦ	
น	า	
ย	ฦ	
บ	ฦ	
ฟ	ฦ	
ก	ฦ	
เ	า	
อ	ฦ	
อ	ฦ	

า	า
ข	ข
ค	ค
ฅ	ฅ
ฉ	ฉ
ณ	ณ
ด	ด
น	น
บ	บ
ป	ป
ผ	ผ
ฝ	ฝ
พ	พ
ภ	ภ
ม	ม

## Typing in Turkish

In some languages, there are more characters in the alphabet than keys on the keyboard. As a result, there may be more than one native character on one physical key. The goal of this topic is to help the user know how to access these additional characters.

Need to include an image of the Turkish keyboard image, then we can do the table that maps the single key press/double key press/shift key press/multi-tap extras. Perhaps this should be a reference topic, not a task.

Supports press and hold for alternate characters, supports flick/prediction

Can type in this language

Use SYM for symbols

## Typing in Vietnamese

In some languages, there are more characters in the alphabet than keys on the keyboard. As a result, there may be more than one native character on one physical key. The goal of this topic is to help the user know how to access these additional characters.

Need to include an image of the Vietnamese keyboard image, then we can do the table that maps the single key press/double key press/shift key press/multi-tap extras. Perhaps this should be a reference topic, not a task.

Funfact: Non-Latin UI lang that uses separate keyboard layout will automatically get basic US-EN QWERTY input

Supports press-and-hold for alternate characters, supports flick/prediction

Can type in this language

Use SYM for symbols

## Screen display

You can set preferences for your screen display, such as font size and wallpaper, as well as connect your device to an external display.

### Change your backlighting

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Display**.
3. To adjust the brightness, move the slider back and forth.

**Tip:** After you swipe down from the top of the screen, if you see **The Display icon** in the quick settings, you can tap **The Display icon** to display the slider without going into the Display screen.

### Change your font size

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Display**.
3. In the **Font Size** drop-down list, tap the size of font that you want to use.

### Set a picture as your wallpaper

1. Open a picture.
2. Tap **More > The set as icon > Wallpaper**.

**Tip:** If you zoom in to the picture and then set it as your wallpaper, the zoomed-in part of the screen is what will appear as your wallpaper.

# Accessibility

Your BlackBerry 10 device uses several well-established accessibility aids for people with disabilities. These aids include magnify mode, hearing aid mode, ITY support, closed captions, text size adjustment, and the BlackBerry Screen Reader.

## Customize your accessibility settings

You can customize your BlackBerry device to help suit your needs. For example, you can magnify the screen, use your hearing aid with your device, and change the font size.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** **Settings** > **Accessibility**.
3. Change your settings.

## Turn on Magnify mode

You can use Magnify mode to enlarge the information on your BlackBerry device screen. You can zoom in to or zoom out from the screen, even if you use an application that doesn't normally support zooming.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** **Settings** > **Accessibility**.
3. Set the **Magnify Mode** switch to **On**.  
The information on the screen immediately appears larger.
4. To move around the magnified screen, use two fingers to move the screen in whatever direction you want to go.

Illustration of two arrows indicating touches sliding across the screen.

## Customize the magnification level

When you use Magnify mode, you can customize the level of magnification on the screen. To adjust the magnification without leaving your current screen, in magnification mode do one of the following:

- To increase the magnification, zoom in by sliding your fingers apart.
- To decrease the magnification, zoom out by sliding your fingers together.

If you reach the maximum magnification, your BlackBerry device vibrates.

## Temporarily turn off Magnify mode

There may be times when you want to temporarily turn off the magnification of your screen to see the whole screen at once, and then turn on Magnify mode again to continue what you were doing. To temporarily turn off Magnify mode:

- Using two fingers, swipe down from the top of the screen.

To turn on Magnify mode again, repeat the above step.

## Turn on Hearing Aid mode

This feature might not be supported depending on your BlackBerry device model.

Hearing Aid mode is designed to improve the compatibility of your device with your hearing aid. When you have Hearing Aid mode turned on, **The Hearing Aid mode icon** appears on the Status bar.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Aid Settings**.
3. Set the **Hearing Aid Mode** switch to **On**.

## Turn on TTY support

The TTY device that you want to connect to your BlackBerry device must operate at 48,45 bps.

TTY support is designed to allow your device to connect with an external TTY device that converts received calls to text.

If your TTY device is designed for use with a 2.5-mm headset jack, you must use an adapter accessory to connect your TTY device to your device. To get an adapter accessory that BlackBerry has approved for use with your device, visit [www.shopblackberry.com](http://www.shopblackberry.com).

1. Connect a TTY device to your device according to the instructions that came with your TTY device.
2. In the Phone app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
3. Tap **The Settings icon > TTY**.
4. Set the **TTY** switch to **On**.

## Turn on Closed Captions

Closed Captions displays text on your BlackBerry device screen when you play video files that support closed captioning.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.

2. Tap **Settings** **Settings > Accessibility**
3. Set the **Closed Captions** switch to **On**.

## BlackBerry Screen Reader

The BlackBerry Screen Reader is an assistive technology that lets users with vision impairment interact with their BlackBerry 10 device using speech output. The BlackBerry Screen Reader uses text to speech (TTS) to read screen content, such as documents, email messages, text messages (SMS), titles and properties of media files, and other text-based information. The BlackBerry Screen Reader also provides navigation cues by reading screen layout information, such as menu titles, page numbers, and links.

### Turn on or turn off the BlackBerry Screen Reader

The BlackBerry Screen Reader provides text-to-speech (TTS) interaction with the display on your BlackBerry smartphone.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image** **Settings > Accessibility**
3. Tap **Screen Reader**.
4. Set the **Screen Reader** switch to **On**.
5. Tap to select **Continue**, then double tap to proceed.

If you don't want to see this verification message each time you turn on the BlackBerry Screen Reader, turn off the **Confirmation Message** option in the screen reader settings.

You can also quickly turn on the BlackBerry Screen Reader by triple-pressing the Power key. If you don't want to be able to turn on the BlackBerry Screen Reader in this way, you can turn off the **Enable using triple tap** option in the screen reader settings.

To turn off the BlackBerry Screen Reader, triple-press the **Power** key.

### Turn on or turn off the Dark Screen mode

If you are using the BlackBerry Screen Reader, you can add privacy and conserve battery life using Dark Screen mode. This mode turns the screen display backlighting down to 10% brightness.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** **Settings > Accessibility**.
3. Tap **Screen Reader**.
4. Set the **Dark Screen Mode** switch to **On**.

## Change the language that the BlackBerry Screen Reader uses

If you speak more than one language, your BlackBerry Screen Reader can, too. You can quickly change the TTS language if you're reading web content or email in a different language than the preferred language that you set for your BlackBerry device.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Accessibility**.
3. Tap **Screen Reader**.
4. In the **TTS Language** drop-down list, tap a language.

## Turn on or turn off Keyboard Echo

Make sure you're saying what you think you are saying. The Keyboard Echo feature reads information back to you when you're typing in a text field.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Accessibility**.
3. Tap **Screen Reader**.
4. Tap **Keyboard Echo**.
5. In the drop-down list, tap **None**, **Characters**, **Words**, or **Characters and Words**.

## Turn on the Silent on Calls setting

No one wants to be interrupted when on a phone call. The Silent on Calls setting prevents the BlackBerry Screen Reader from reading back information while you're on a call.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings Settings > Accessibility**.
3. Tap **Screen Reader**.
4. Set the **Silent on Calls** switch to **On**.

## Adjust the verbosity

There are times when you need all the information you can get. In those instances, set the verbosity of BlackBerry Screen Reader to high. Once you get more familiar with the device, you can change the verbosity to low to include less information.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Accessibility**.
3. Tap **Screen Reader**.

- 4. Tap **Verbosity**.
- 5. In the drop-down list, tap **High** or **Low**.

## Adjust the volume, speed, and pitch

You may want to increase the speed of the BlackBerry Screen Reader when you're surfing the Internet, or slow it down when you're getting instructions. You might want to increase the volume when you're outside, or decrease it when you're at home or in a quieter space. You might also want to adjust the pitch to make the reader easier to understand. The BlackBerry Screen Reader lets you adjust the volume, speed, and pitch of the reader to provide a personalized experience for any situation.

- 1. On the home screen, swine down from the top of the screen.
- 2. Tap **Image Settings > Accessibility**.
- 3. Tap **Screen Reader**.
- 4. Move the **Volume**, **Speed**, and **Pitch** sliders.

## BlackBerry Screen Reader gestures

The BlackBerry Screen Reader uses a combination of gestures that are used in other apps on your BlackBerry device and gestures that are specific to the BlackBerry Screen Reader. Gestures that start at the edges of the screen (such as swiping down from the top to access Settings or swiping up from the bottom to minimize an app) are the same in the Screen Reader app as they are in all other apps. However, there are additional gestures that help you navigate when the BlackBerry Screen Reader is turned on.

Task	Gesture
Set and read the point of regard  A point of regard can be a field, button, selection area, link, application, paragraph, sentence, word, title, picture, or any other display feature.	Tap the point of regard with one finger.
Access Discovery mode  <b>Note:</b> Discovery mode enables you to interact with points of regard, such as letters, words, buttons, links, menu items, and pictures. These points of regard are highlighted.	Tap and hold the point of regard with one finger, then move your finger. The point of regard is set to the object under your finger.
Read description of the point of regard	Tap with two fingers.
Activate a point of regard  <b>Note:</b> When you activate a point of regard, you indicate that you want to interact with that part of the display.	Double-tap the point of regard with one finger.
Select an item	Triple-tap with one finger.



Task	Gesture
Press and hold	Double-tap and hold.
Navigate to the previous or next point of regard	Swipe right with one finger to go to the next point; swipe left with one finger to go to the previous point.
Pan or scroll a list	Swipe up with two fingers to scroll toward the top; swipe down with two fingers to scroll toward the bottom. This action sets a new point of regard.
Go to the top or bottom of a display area	Swipe up with two fingers and hold to go to the top; swipe down and hold with two fingers to scroll to the bottom. This action sets a new point of regard.
Change slider value	Flick up with one finger to increase the slider value; flick down with one finger to decrease the slider value.
Move to the previous or next section of text (such as a character, word, line, sentence, or paragraph) or web content (such as headings and links).	Swipe left with one finger to go to the previous text or content; swipe right with one finger to go to the next text or content.
Change size of text, such as character, word, line, sentence, and paragraph, or web content such as headings and links.	Swipe up with one finger while in the content to increase the size; swipe down with one finger while in the content to decrease the size.
Move left, right, up, or down	Swipe left, right, up, or down with three fingers.
Stop the BlackBerry Screen Reader from reading that point of focus	Swipe down and then to the left with one finger.
Perform the default action of the application (such as take a picture with the Camera app, or start and stop a video in the Video app)	Double-tap with two fingers
Mute the BlackBerry Screen Reader	Swipe down and to the left with two fingers.
Read the time and date	Quickly swipe down and then slide up with one finger.
<b>Note:</b> The status bar containing the time and date information is very close to the top edge of the display. As a result, when you interact with the status bar, it may cause the settings menu to appear.	
Read the status bar information (including battery and radio connectivity)	Quickly swipe up and then slide down with one finger.
<b>Note:</b> The status bar is very close to the top edge of the display. As a result, when you interact with the status bar, it may cause the settings menu to appear.	

## Gestures for the Quick Tasks mode

With the Quick Tasks mode, you can change frequently changed settings and access additional BlackBerry Screen Reader features. When you enter Quick Tasks mode, you have 3 seconds to complete a task. If you don't complete a task, the device automatically exits the mode and vibrates briefly to notify you. When you enter Quick Tasks mode, a vertical list of tasks appears. You can use the following gestures to interact with the list:

Task	Gesture
Access Quick Tasks mode	Swipe down and to the right with one finger
Select an item	Tap with one finger. After the selection is made, the device exits Quick Tasks mode.
Switch on or switch off an item	Tap with one finger to turn on or turn off the switch. After 3 seconds, the device automatically exits Quick Tasks mode.
Select an item from a list	Tap with one finger to move between the choices. Each tap moves you to the next choice. When you get to the last item in the list, the next tap returns to the top of the list. After 3 seconds, the device automatically exits Quick Tasks mode.
Select an item from a list using Discover mode	Tap and hold with one finger. Drag the finger up or down the list, then tap with a second finger to select a list item. The device does not automatically exit Quick Tasks mode.
Change speech volume	Swipe up with one finger to increase the volume. Swipe down with one finger to decrease the volume.
Change speech verbosity	Tap with one finger to change the verbosity level. Levels to choose from are either High or Low.
Change speech speed	Swipe left with one finger to decrease the speech rate. Swipe right with one finger to increase the speech rate.
Rewind speech	Swipe up and down to replay the last ten spoken items.
Spell the word	Swipe left to spell the last item spoken letter by letter. Swipe right to phonetically spell the last item (for example, Alpha, Bravo, and so on). Spelling can also be used with Rewind to spell the last ten spoken items.

## Gestures for the BlackBerry Calendar

Task	Gesture
Move to the next day, week, or month	Swipe to the right with three fingers.

Task	Gesture
Move to the previous day, week, or month	Swipe to the left with three fingers.

## Gestures for the Home screen

Task	Gesture
Switch between the work and personal workspaces	Swipe down from the top of the screen using three fingers. Tap once with one finger to set the focus of regard on the workspace, then double tap with one finger to select the workspace.
Minimize the application and show your Active Frames	Swipe up from the bottom. This gesture is the same as the one used outside the BlackBerry Screen Reader.
Close an Active Frame	Tap and hold with one finger, then move your finger to the app. The point of regard is set under your finger. Then, double-tap with two fingers to close the app.

## Media cards and storage

A media card lets you store more pictures, videos, music, and documents on your BlackBerry device! The files that you store on your device can be transferred between your device and your computer in just a few steps.

### Moving or copying media files and documents

You can drag and drop documents, pictures, videos, music, and other files by using your BlackBerry device as a drive on your computer.

You can also use BlackBerry Blend to keep your media files and documents in sync between your device and your computer. To download BlackBerry Blend, on your computer, visit [www.blackberry.com/BlackBerryBlend](http://www.blackberry.com/BlackBerryBlend). For more information about synchronizing media files and documents, see the Help in BlackBerry Blend.

**Tip:** To locate files on your device, if you know the file or folder name, tap **Search** to search for it.

### Transfer files between your computer and device using a USB connection

- Using a USB cable, connect your BlackBerry device to your computer.  
**This illustration shows where you connect the cable to the USB port on the bottom of the device.**
- If necessary, enter your device password.  
Your device and media card appear as drives on your computer.

3. Go to the files or folders that you want to copy.
4. Drag and drop the files or folders.

## Transfer files between your computer and device using a Wi-Fi connection

You must set a new storage access password each time that you turn on access to storage using a Wi-Fi network. Before files are moved over a Wi-Fi network, you are prompted to enter the storage access password.

1. On the home screen of your BlackBerry device, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > About**.
3. In the **Category** drop-down list, tap **Network**. Make note of the **IPv4** address.
4. Tap **The Back icon**.
5. Tap **Storage and Access**.
6. Turn on the **Access using Wi-Fi** switch.
7. Type a storage access password.
8. Tap **Identification on Network** and make note of the **Username**.
9. On your computer, do one of the following:
  - If your computer uses a Windows operating system, in a Run command, type the IP address using the following format: \\xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx.
  - If your computer uses a Mac operating system, click **Go > Connect to Server**. Type the IP address using the following format: smb://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx.
10. Go to the files or folders that you want to copy.
11. When prompted, enter the username and storage access password.
12. Drag and drop the files or folders.

## Turn on USB mass storage

To use the USB mass storage feature, you must have a media card in your BlackBerry device.

USB mass storage is designed to let you use your device as a USB drive. Using a USB cable, you can connect your device to a computer, car stereo, or other external device and access files on your media card.

**Note:** When USB mass storage mode is on, apps on your device can't access files on your media card.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Storage and Access**.
3. Turn on the **USB Mass Storage** switch.

To stop using USB mass storage, disconnect your USB cable.

## Using a media card

Want more space to store your ring tones, videos, pictures, and songs? For additional space to save documents and media files, you can insert a microSD card into your BlackBerry device. Using a media card can help to increase the performance and power efficiency of your device.

You might be able to move large amounts of data by simply moving the media card into another device that supports the microSD card.

## Supported media cards

Your BlackBerry device supports media card sizes up to 64 GB. Only microSD cards are supported.

To use a media card larger than 32 GB, you may need to format the media card to FAT32 format. You can use your device to format your media card.

## Format your media card

You can format your media card to help resolve an issue with the media card. When you format your media card, all of your media card data is deleted.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Storage and Access**.
3. Tap **Format Media Card**.

## Wipe data from your media card

To help protect your privacy, you can permanently delete all of your media card data. Depending on the amount of data, this process might take some time.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Storage and Access**.
3. Tap **Erase Media Card**.

To use the media card again, you must format it.

## Turn on encryption

Your BlackBerry device creates and stores an encryption key when you turn on encryption. Your device uses this encryption key to access encrypted files on your media card.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Security and Privacy > Encryption**.
3. Do any of the following:
  - Turn on the **Device Encryption** switch.
  - Turn on the **Media Card Encryption** switch.

**CAUTION:** Turn off encryption or back up your encrypted media card files before a security wipe. A security wipe is designed to delete your device data including the encryption key. Without the encryption key, your device can't access your encrypted media card files.

## Check how much storage space is free

You can view the amount of used and free storage space available on your BlackBerry device and your media card. You can also see a breakdown of what types of files are taking up space.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Storage and Access**.
3. Tap **Device Storage Details** or **Media Card Details**.

**Tip:** The amount of available storage space displays when you minimize the **File Manager** app.

## How do I free up storage space?

To make room for more files and apps, try any of the following:

- Save documents and media files on your media card. To automatically save camera pictures and videos on your media card, on the home screen, tap **The Camera icon**. Swipe down from the top of the screen and tap **The Settings icon**.
- Move documents and media files from your device to your media card using File Manager.
- Reduce the size of pictures that you take and videos that you record. To change the ratio option for your pictures and videos, on the home screen, tap **The Camera icon** > **The More icon**.
- Transfer some of your data to your computer using a USB connection, a Wi-Fi connection, or BlackBerry Blend. To download BlackBerry Blend, on your computer, visit [www.blackberry.com/BlackBerryBlend](http://www.blackberry.com/BlackBerryBlend).
- Delete files that you don't need. To delete multiple items, in an app, tap **The More icon** > **The Select More icon**. Select the items and tap **The More icon** > **The Delete icon**.
- Delete apps that you don't use. To delete an app, on the home screen, touch and hold an app icon until the icons begin to blink. On the icon for the app that you want to delete, tap **The Delete icon**. If you don't see **The Delete icon** on the app icon, the app can't be deleted.

## Optimize your device's performance

If you find that your BlackBerry device is running unusually slow, try any of the following:

- Close any apps that you aren't using.

- Delete messages that you don't need to keep.
- In your browser privacy settings, clear your history, cookies, and other website data.

## Error messages: Media card

If your BlackBerry device detects a possible problem or issue with your media card, you can view more details about the error in your Storage and Access settings.

### Your media card isn't recognized

The media card might be in an unreadable format. Consider formatting the media card.

**CAUTION:** Media card data is deleted when you format a media card.

### Media card is password protected

A password is blocking access to the media card and data stored on it. Insert a media card into your BlackBerry device that isn't password protected.

### Your media card is read-only

You can view and open files on the media card. You can't move, delete, or modify the files on the media card.

### Your media card isn't responding

The media card isn't communicating with your BlackBerry device. Consider using a different media card.

### No media card was found

Make sure that there is a media card in your BlackBerry device and that it's inserted properly.

## Troubleshooting: Storage space

### My device isn't recognized when I connect it to my computer

If your computer doesn't automatically detect your BlackBerry device, try the following:

- Check the USB cable and points of connection.

- On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap **Image Settings > Storage and Access**. Depending on the operating system on your computer, tap the **USB Connection** drop-down list and change to **Connect to Windows** or **Connect to Mac**.
- Consider updating or installing device drivers on your computer. The drivers you need are installed when you download BlackBerry Blend. To download BlackBerry Blend, on your computer, visit [www.blackberry.com/BlackBerryBlend](http://www.blackberry.com/BlackBerryBlend).

## BlackBerry Link features on your device

If you have BlackBerry Link on your computer, you can use your BlackBerry device to:

- View and delete files that are stored on your computer.
- Sync your music, pictures, videos, and documents between your device and your computer.

To download the latest version of BlackBerry Link to your computer or to transfer data to a new device, visit [www.blackberry.com/BlackBerryLink](http://www.blackberry.com/BlackBerryLink).

## Working with files stored on your computer

### Access files stored on your computer

If you are running the latest version of BlackBerry 10 OS, you can use your BlackBerry device to view and delete music, pictures, videos, and documents on your computer. To use this feature, BlackBerry Link must be open on your computer, and associated with your BlackBerry ID.

In BlackBerry Link on your computer, you can specify the folders that you want to access:

1. Connect your device to a wireless network. For example, a Wi-Fi network.
2. In the File Manager app, tap **The Device icon**. If BlackBerry Balance is enabled on your device, use the File Manager app in your personal space.
3. Tap the computer that you want to access.

**Tip:** Check your computer settings or connect your computer to a power source to prevent your computer from entering sleep mode or turning off.

### Edit or delete a file

Do one of the following:

- To edit a file that's stored on your computer, tap the file. If your BlackBerry device supports editing the file, tap **The Edit icon**.

**Tip:** If you save your changes in the default location, the **The Sync icon** icon indicates when BlackBerry Link is syncing the file and overwriting the original version on your computer.



- To permanently delete a file that's stored on your computer, touch and hold a file. Tap **The Delete icon**.

## Copy a file to your device

After you save a file that's stored on your computer to your BlackBerry device, you can view the file even when you're not connected to the Internet.

1. Touch and hold a file that's stored on your computer.
2. Tap **The Copy icon**.
3. Navigate to where you want to save the file. For example, on your media card.
4. Tap **Paste**.

If BlackBerry Link syncs your device and computer files, you might have two versions of the file on your computer (the original file and the version that you saved to your device). Make sure that you open the version that you last edited before making additional updates to the file.

## View paired computers

Your BlackBerry device can be connected to up to ten computers using BlackBerry Link.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **The Settings icon Settings > BlackBerry Link**.

**Tip:** To access your computer files over the mobile network, change the **Use Mobile Network** switch to **On**.

To remove a computer from the list, touch and hold a computer. Tap **The Delete icon**.

## Troubleshooting: BlackBerry Link

### I can't access files on my computer

To access your computer files using your BlackBerry device, BlackBerry Link must be open on a computer that's connected to the Internet.

If you don't see your computer as a source in the File Manager app, try the following:

1. Minimize File Manager and verify that you don't see **The Work space** on the app. If you see this icon, use the File Manager app in your personal space.
2. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
3. Verify that your device is connected to a wireless network.
4. Tap **The Settings icon Settings**. Do the following:
  - In the **BlackBerry ID** section, verify that you are signed in using the same BlackBerry ID as on your computer.

- If your device is connected to a mobile network instead of a Wi-Fi network, in the **BlackBerry Link** section, change the **Use Mobile Network** switch to **On**.
- In the **BlackBerry Link** section, verify that the **BlackBerry Link** switch is set to **On**.

If you still can't see your computer files, try any of the following from your computer:

- Verify that your computer is turned on and not in sleep mode.
- Verify that the files you want to access are in the location that is specified in BlackBerry Link.
- Some work or public networks might prevent you from accessing your files on your device. Try connecting to a different network and try again.

For more troubleshooting information, see the help in BlackBerry Link on your computer.

# Applications and features

## Organizing your apps

To keep all of your apps organized, you can move apps around on the home screen, create folders for your apps, or delete apps that you no longer use.

### Leave an app or close an app

Instead of closing an app when you're done using it, you can make multitasking easier by minimizing an app. You can see your open apps arranged as Active Frames on the home screen, and you can tap an Active Frame to return the app to full screen. Once you minimize an app, you can close it from the home screen.

1. To minimize an app, swipe up from the bottom of the screen. The app is arranged as an Active Frame on the home screen.
2. To close an app after you minimize it, on the home screen, on an Active Frame, tap **Close**.

### Move an app icon around the home screen

You can rearrange the app icons on the home screen so that they are where you want them to be. For instance, if you're right-handed, you can arrange your frequently used apps on the right side of the screen. Then when you're using your BlackBerry device with one hand, it's easier to open those apps.

1. On the home screen, touch and hold an app icon until all of the icons start to blink.
2. Drag the icon to a different location on the home screen and release your finger.

### Add folders to the home screen

You can organize your app icons by adding folders to the home screen. For example, you can add a folder for all of the games that you download and a folder for all of your business and productivity apps. To hide unused apps, you can add a folder to the home screen and put all of your unused apps in that folder.

1. Touch and hold an app icon until all of the icons start to blink.
2. Drag the app icon on top of another app icon that you want to include in the same folder.
3. Type the name of the folder.
4. Tap **Create**.

## Move an app icon out of a folder

1. In a folder on the home screen, touch and hold an app icon until all of the icons start to blink.
2. Drag the app icon to the bottom of the screen and release.

## Rename a folder

1. On the home screen, tap a folder.
2. At the bottom of the screen, touch and hold the folder name.
3. Type the new name of the folder.
4. Tap **Rename**.

## Deleting apps

You can delete apps from the home screen of your BlackBerry device, or you can delete the apps that you download from the BlackBerry World storefront.

### Delete a downloaded item from BlackBerry World

1. On the BlackBerry World home screen, tap **All > My World**.
2. Tap **My Apps & Games**, **My Video**, or **My Music**.
3. Tap **Downloaded**.
4. Touch and hold an item, and tap **Uninstall**.
  - If you think that you might want to reinstall the app later, tap **Uninstall**.
  - If you want to permanently delete the app, tap **Delete**.

Uninstalled apps and games are listed on your **My World** screen. To see this list, tap **My Apps & Games > Available**.

### Delete an app from your home screen

1. On the home screen of your BlackBerry device, touch and hold an app icon until the icons begin to blink.
2. On an app icon, tap **the Delete icon**.

**Tip:** Some app icons on your home screen are part of the core BlackBerry experience. These apps can't be deleted, and the delete icon will not appear on these app icons.

## Reinstall an app or game

1. On the BlackBerry World home screen, tap **The All icon** > **My World** > **My Apps & Games**.
2. Tap **Available**
  - To reinstall one app or game, tap **The Install icon** next to the app or game that you want to install.
  - To reinstall all of your uninstalled apps and games, at the bottom of the screen, tap **The Install All icon**.

## Calendar

The BlackBerry Calendar app on your BlackBerry device combines the calendar info from the email and social networking accounts that you add to your device. The Calendar app presents the info so that you can view all your meetings, appointments, tasks, alarms, and events in one place.

## About the Calendar app

If you subscribe to public calendars, such as movie theater calendars or school calendars, the events from those calendars can also appear in the Calendar app.

Even if you don't add any accounts to your device, you can still use the Calendar app to create and manage meetings, appointments, and events.

## Keyboard shortcuts: Calendar app

Go to today	Press <b>T</b>
Go to a date	Press <b>G</b>
Go to the week view	Press <b>W</b>
Go to the month view	Press <b>M</b>
Go to the previous day, week, or month	Press <b>P</b>
Go to the next day, week, or month	Press <b>N</b>
Go to the schedule view	Press <b>S</b>
Go to the agenda view	Press <b>A</b>
Create a new event	Press <b>C</b>
Search your events	Press <b>S</b>

---

Edit an event

Open an event and press **E**.

---

## Subscribe to a public calendar on your device

Make sure you have the address for the public calendar in iCalShare (ICS) format.

You can add a public calendar that uses the ICS format to your BlackBerry device so that you can see that calendar in the Calendar app. When the owner of the calendar makes changes to events, the changes are synced to your device. Only the owner can change events in a public calendar.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **The Settings icon** > **Accounts** > **The Add Account icon** > **Subscribed Calendar**.
3. In the **Calendar Name** field, enter a name for the calendar.
4. In the **Server Address** field, enter the address for the public calendar in ICS format.
5. Tap **Done**.

## View your events

You can view your events by day, week, or month. You can also go to a particular date in any calendar view by tapping **The Go to Date icon**.

1. In the Calendar app, tap **The More icon**.
2. Do one of the following:
  - To view events for a single day, tap **The Day View icon**.
  - To view events for a week, tap **The Week View icon**. Try using the pinch gesture to zoom in and see a more detailed view.
  - To view events for a month, tap **The Month View icon**.
  - To see an agenda view, tap the icon in the lower-left corner. Tap **The Agenda icon**.

**Tip:** To scroll through multiple months in your calendar, in the month view, swipe down from the top of the screen. To view a year, tap **Year**.

## Find email and files associated with an event

Your BlackBerry device searches your data to find email and files that might be relevant to your event. For example, if you're meeting with people to review a document, your device might show that document.

1. In the Calendar app, tap an event.
2. Tap **Emails**.

## Create an event in the Calendar app

1. In the Calendar app, tap **The add event icon**.
2. Enter the information for the event.
3. Tap **Save**.

**Tip:** In any schedule view (for example, in the day schedule view or in the week view), you can create an event by just tapping a spot on the schedule. Tap the **New Event** block that appears, to change the event.

## Invite people to an event

If your account supports adding participants to events, then you can add participants either when you create the event, or after. If you added a Microsoft Exchange work account, you can connect to the remote server to add people who aren't in your contact list.

When you create or change an event, tap the **Participants** field.

- If the person that you want to add is in your contact list, start typing a name. Tap the name from the list.
- If the person that you want to add is in your organization, and you added your work account to your device, type the name. Tap **Look up**.

**Tip:** Some accounts might let you view the participants' availability. After you add all the participants to the event, tap the event time. If any of the participants have a schedule conflict, they will appear in red next to the time slider at the top of the screen. To find a time that works for everyone, tap **The availability icon** and move the slider until the participants turn green.

## Add a location to an event

When you create or change an event, do one of the following:

- To type a location manually, in the **Location** field, type a location.
- To open the Maps app and choose a location, in the **Location** field, tap **The Map icon**. Choose a location.

## Schedule a recurring event

1. When you create or change an event, tap the time for the event.
2. In the **Repeats** drop-down list, tap an option.
3. When you're finished, tap **The Back icon**.

## Change the availability status or reminder time for an event

When you create an event, to save you time, the BlackBerry Calendar app uses your default settings for the event's availability status and the reminder time. You can change these settings.

1. When you create or change an event, tap the **Calendar** drop-down list.
  - To change the availability status, in the **Status** drop-down list, tap **Busy**, **Out of Office**, **Free** or **Tentative**.
  - To change the reminder time, in the **Reminder** drop-down list, tap an option.
2. Tap **Save**.

## Add conference call details to an event

When you add conference call details to a meeting or event, participants with BlackBerry devices can use the Join Now feature to join the conference call without dialing the various numbers and conference call bridges.

**Tip:** You can save your conference call details in the BlackBerry Calendar app settings so that you don't have to manually add the details to each conference call meeting.

1. When you create or change an event, tap the **Calendar** drop-down list.
2. In the **Conference** drop-down list, do one of the following:
  - To add new conference call details to your event, tap **Add Bridge**. Enter a name for the conference call, and the phone numbers and access codes. Tap **Save**.
  - If you have conference call details saved in your Calendar app settings, tap a conference call bridge.

## Add a task to the Calendar app

When you add a task to the Calendar app your task details are added to the Remember app.

1. In the Calendar app, tap **The More icon** > **The Add Task icon**.
2. Enter your task details.
3. Tap **Save**.

Your task is added to both the Calendar and the Remember apps.

## Hide a calendar

You can temporarily hide calendars from the main view in your Calendar app.

1. In the Calendar app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Manage Calendars**.



3. Clear the check box beside the calendar that you want to hide.

## Change or delete an event

If you're the organizer of an event, you can change or delete it.

In the Calendar app, touch and hold an event.

- To change an event, tap **Edit**. Make your changes. Tap **Save**.
- To delete an event, tap **Delete**.

## Create a follow-up meeting

When you create a follow-up meeting, the meeting details such as the participants, subject, and notes from the original event are added to the follow-up meeting. Follow-up meetings can be created from past and future calendar events.

1. Open a calendar event.
2. Tap **The More icon** > **The Follow Up icon**.
3. Enter the information for the follow-up meeting.
4. Tap **Save**.

## Join a conference call from a meeting reminder

If a meeting in your calendar includes conference call info, you might be able to join the call with one tap instead of dialing the conference call numbers manually.

In the meeting reminder, tap **Join Now**.

## Save conference call details in the Calendar app

You can save the conference call bridge info in your BlackBerry Calendar app so that you can quickly add that info to your meeting invitations.

1. In the Calendar app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **The Settings icon** > **Mobile Conferencing** > **The Add Bridge icon**.
3. Enter the conference call bridge information, such as phone numbers and access codes.
4. Tap **Save**.

## Add WebEx details to an event

If you download the Cisco WebEx Meetings app, and have a valid account that allows the scheduling of WebEx meetings, you can add WebEx details to the calendar events that you organize that have at least one participant.

**Note:** If your calendar event is associated with a work email account, the Cisco WebEx Meetings app must be installed in the work space on your BlackBerry device. If your calendar event is associated with a personal email account, the Cisco WebEx Meetings app must be installed in the personal space on your device.

1. When you create a calendar event, tap the **Calendar** drop-down list.
2. Set the **Add WebEx** switch to **on**.
3. Tap **Save**.
4. On the **WebEx Meeting** screen, enter your WebEx password.
5. Tap **Schedule**.

WebEx details are added to the notes section of the event.

## Add WebEx details to an existing event

If you're the organizer of a scheduled calendar event, and you are logged in to the Cisco WebEx Meetings app on your BlackBerry device, you can add WebEx details to the existing event.

**Note:** If your calendar event is associated with a work email account, the Cisco WebEx Meetings app must be installed in the work space on your device. If your calendar event is associated with a personal email account, the Cisco WebEx Meetings app must be installed in the personal space on your device.

1. When you change an event, tap **The More icon**.
2. Tap **The Add WebEx icon**.
3. On the **WebEx Meeting** screen, enter your WebEx password.
4. Tap **Schedule**.

When you add WebEx details to an existing event, an update with the details is sent to the event participants.

## Edit WebEx details for an existing event

If you're the organizer of a scheduled calendar event, and you are logged in to the Cisco WebEx Meetings app on your BlackBerry device, you can edit the WebEx details for the existing event.

**Note:** If your calendar event is associated with a work email account, the Cisco WebEx Meetings app must be installed in the work space on your device. If your calendar event is associated with a personal email account, the Cisco WebEx Meetings app must be installed in the personal space on your device.

1. When you change your event, enter the updated information such as the event time or participants, and tap **Save**.

2. On the **WebEx Meeting** screen, change the details to match the updated information in the event. Enter your WebEx password.
3. Tap **Schedule**.

When you edit the WebEx details for an existing event, an update with the details is sent to the event participants.

## Join a WebEx event

To join an event, you must have the Cisco WebEx Meetings app installed on your BlackBerry device.

**Note:** If your calendar event is associated with a work email account, the Cisco WebEx Meetings app must be installed in the work space on your device. If your calendar event is associated with a personal email account, the Cisco WebEx Meetings app must be installed in the personal space on your device.

To join a calendar event that includes WebEx details, do one of the following:

- In a calendar reminder, tap **Start WebEx**.
- In a calendar event, on the event screen, tap **Start WebEx**, or tap **The More icon** > **The Start WebEx icon**.

## Send an "I will be late" message

If you will be late for a meeting or event, you can quickly send a message to let other participants know.

1. Open the event, either from the BlackBerry Calendar app or from the event reminder.
2. Tap **The More actions icon** > **The I'm Running Late icon**.
3. In the dialog box, move the slider to indicate how late you will be.
4. Tap **Email All** or **Email Organizer**.

## Share a file with meeting participants

You can use email to share the files on your BlackBerry device with other meeting participants.

1. Touch and hold a file.
2. Tap **The Share icon** > **Meeting Participants**.
3. Tap a meeting.
4. On the **Compose** screen, type a message.
5. Tap **Send**.

## Customizing Calendar app settings

You can customize your calendar settings to help you manage your schedule as productively as possible.

## Change your default calendar

When you add an event to your calendar or send a meeting invitation, your device adds the event to your default calendar.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** **Settings > Accounts**.
3. Tap **Set defaults**.
4. To change the default calendar that you add events to and send meeting invitations from, in the **Calendar** drop-down list, tap a calendar.

## Enable Meeting Mode

When you enable Meeting Mode, your phone is automatically silenced during meetings. When meetings end, your notifications are automatically reverted to your preferred notification settings.

1. In the Calendar app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **The Settings icon** **> Meeting Mode**.
3. Turn on the **Meeting Mode** switch.

## Change the email address to use with each calendar

If you have multiple calendars on your BlackBerry device, you can set a different email address for each calendar. When you create an event in a specific calendar, invitations are sent using the email address that you assigned to that calendar.

The email address that you use must already be added to your device. Some accounts don't allow you to change the email address (for example, your work account).

1. In the Calendar app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **The Settings icon** **> Meeting Invitation Settings**.
3. Beneath a calendar, in the drop-down list, tap an email address.

## Change default settings for events

You can change the default length, reminder times, and snooze intervals for your events or meetings.

1. In the Calendar app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** **Settings > General**.
  - To change how long your meetings are scheduled for, in the **Meeting Duration** drop-down list, tap a new duration.
  - To change the default reminder time for events, in the **Meeting Reminder** or **All Day Meeting Reminder** drop-down list, tap a new time.
  - To change the snooze intervals, in the **Snooze Interval** drop-down list, tap a new snooze time.

## Change how your calendar is displayed

1. In the Calendar app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** > **Settings** > **General**.
  - To change the view (day, week, or month) that you see when you open the calendar, in the **Default Calendar View** drop-down list, tap a view.
  - To change the day that the week starts on, in the **First Day of the Week** drop-down list, tap an option.
  - To view your calendar as a 5 day work week, or a 7 day full week, in the **Week View** drop-down list, tap an option.
  - To view week numbers, turn on the **Display Week Numbers** switch.
  - To change the day that the year starts on, in the **First Week of the Year** drop-down lists, tap a date.
  - To change your working hours, in the **Working Hours** section, in the **Start** and **End** drop-down lists, tap an option.

## Troubleshooting: Calendar app

### I can't sync my calendar

Try the following:

- If your calendar is associated with one of your accounts (for example, your Gmail calendar), check that synchronization for the calendar is turned on. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap **The Settings icon** > **Accounts**. Tap an account. Check that the **Sync Calendar** switch is turned on.
- If the calendar is saved on your computer in Microsoft Outlook or Apple iCal, try using BlackBerry Link to sync the calendar info on your computer with your BlackBerry device. For more information, see the BlackBerry Link help.
- If your calendar still isn't in sync, try removing and re-adding the account that the calendar is associated with.

### I can't reply to or send meeting invitations

Check that you added an email account that has an integrated calendar. Some accounts might not include a calendar feature.

### New or updated events aren't appearing in my calendar

You might need to refresh your calendars. In the Calendar app, tap **The More icon** > **Refresh**.

### I have duplicate calendar entries

If you imported calendar entries using BlackBerry Link, you might see duplicate entries on your device after syncing your device and computer.

You can remove duplicates by deleting duplicates in your address book, or by clearing your local data on your device.

To remove duplicate calendar entries by deleting your local device data, do the following:

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **The Settings icon** **Settings > Accounts**.
3. Tap **The More actions icon**.
4. Tap **Clear Local Calendar**.

**CAUTION:** Clearing your local data will permanently delete any calendar entries that you saved just locally to your device.

## Contacts

When you add contacts to the Contacts app on your BlackBerry device, connecting with them is easy. The Contacts app is integrated with the BlackBerry Hub, the BlackBerry Calendar, and other apps, so you can quickly add contacts to relevant messages and events or share your pictures and videos.

### About the Contacts app

If you added an email account or social networking account to your device, contacts from those accounts can appear in your contact list. It's simple to find the people that you want to connect with because your device automatically merges contacts who share first and last names, email addresses, or mobile phone numbers.

### Keyboard shortcuts: Contacts

Search for a contact	In the contact list, start typing a contact's name.
Edit a contact	In the contact list, tap a contact. Press <b>E</b> .
Go to the top of a contact's details	In a contact's details, press <b>T</b> .
Go to the bottom of a contact's details	In a contact's details, press <b>B</b> .

### Adding contacts to the Contacts app

There are a variety of ways that you can add contacts to the Contacts app.

#### Add a contact to the Contacts app

1. In the Contacts app, tap **The New Contact icon**.
2. Enter the information for the contact. For additional fields, tap **The Add Field icon**.

3. If you have a work account and BlackBerry Balance is set up on your BlackBerry device, to save the contact in your work space, at the top of the screen, tap **Work**. After you start adding the contact information, you can't save the contact in your personal space.
4. Tap **Save**.

**Tip:** To choose the account or storage location for a contact, tap the **Save to** button at the top of the screen. Select the checkbox beside an account or storage location.

## Copy contacts to and from your micro SIM card

Your micro SIM card can store contact names and phone numbers. Copying contacts to and from your micro SIM card allows you to easily transfer contacts from one device to another. When you insert a micro SIM card in your BlackBerry device, you can view contacts that are stored on the micro SIM card in your contact list. You can copy the micro SIM card contacts to your device memory so that the contacts are available to you even if the micro SIM card is removed.

You can also use BlackBerry Link to back up your contacts on a computer.

**Note:** If you added a work account to your device and your administrator turned on BlackBerry Balance, you can't copy work contacts to your micro SIM card.

1. In the Contacts app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings**.
  - To copy all of the contacts from your SIM card to your device memory, tap **Import Contacts from SIM Card**.
  - To copy all contacts from your device memory to your SIM card, tap **Copy Contacts from Device to SIM Card**.
  - To view your SIM card contacts and decide which ones you want to copy to your device, tap **Manage SIM Card Contacts**.

## Add a contact from the Calls screen

1. In the Phone app, tap **The Calls icon**.
2. Touch and hold a phone number.
3. Tap **The Add To Contacts icon**.
  - To add the phone number to an existing contact entry, tap a contact from the list.
  - To add the contact as a new contact, tap **The New icon**.
4. Tap **Save**.

## Import contact card information to your contact list

If someone shares a contact card with you (also known as a vCard or .vcf file), you can add that contact information to the contact list on your BlackBerry device.

1. Tap the contact card.

2. Do one of the following:
  - If the contact card contains one contact only, tap **The Save icon**.
  - If the contact card contains multiple contacts, tap **Import**.

## Contact views

When you tap a contact in the Contacts app, your BlackBerry device shows you lots of details about the person. Some info, like a contact's birthday, the company the person works for, and the person's picture, is pulled from social networking accounts that you added to your device, like Twitter or LinkedIn. Other info can be added by you. There are three tabs, or views, that you can tap through.

### Details

This view shows you an overview of contacts' details: how to contact them, where they work, their birthdays, and so on. You can tap on phone numbers or email addresses to start connecting with contacts.

### Updates

This view shows you your contacts' most recent updates from social networking apps like Twitter and Facebook. If you added a contact's company name, the Updates view also shows you news about that company. Tap on an update to see it in a social networking app or the browser.

### Activity

This view shows you upcoming and past interactions with your contacts. Tap on any activity to go directly to that event on your device.

## Changing contacts in the Contacts app

### Add or change a picture for a contact

1. In the Contacts app, tap a contact > **Edit contact**.
  - To use a picture from a social networking account that you added, tap one of the available pictures at the top of the screen.
  - To use a saved picture from your picture library, in the picture area, tap **The Add a Picture icon**. Browse to the picture.
  - To take a picture with the camera, in the picture area, tap **The Add a Picture icon**. Tap **The Camera icon**. Take a picture. If necessary, crop or edit the picture. Tap **Done**.
2. Tap **Save**.

### Change info for a contact

1. In the Contacts app, tap a contact > **Edit contact**.



2. Make your changes. For additional fields, tap **Add Field**.
3. Tap **Save**.

## Delete a contact

1. Touch and hold a contact.
2. Tap **Delete**.

## Copy a contact to another account or storage location

If you have multiple accounts on your BlackBerry device, you might be able to copy a contact to one of those accounts, or to your micro SIM card.

1. In the Contacts app, touch and hold a contact.
2. Tap **The Copy to icon**.
3. Select the checkbox beside an account or storage location.
4. Tap **Done**.

## Create a contact group in the Contacts app

You can group contacts together so that you can easily send messages to everyone in the group, set up meetings, and share files. You can find your groups in the contact list or filter your contact list to show just your contact groups.

1. In the Contacts app, tap **The New Group icon**.
2. In the **Group Name** field, type a name for the contact group.
3. Tap **The New Contacts icon**.
4. Select the contacts to add to the group.
5. Tap **Done**.
6. Tap **Save**.

## Add a contact to a contact group

1. In the Contacts app, tap a contact group.
2. Tap **The Edit icon** > **The Add Contacts icon**.
3. Select the contacts to add to the group.
4. Tap **Done**.
5. Tap **Save**.

## Remove a contact from a contact group

1. In the Contacts app, tap a contact group.
2. Tap **The Edit icon**.
3. Beside the contact's name, tap **The Clear icon**.
4. Tap **Save**.

## Rename a contact group

1. In the Contacts app, tap a contact group.
2. Tap **The Edit icon**.
3. In the **Group Name** field, type a new name for the group.
4. Tap **Save**.

## Add a contact to your favorites

When you add contacts to your favorites, their pictures appear at the top of your contact list so that you can quickly connect with them.

1. In the Contacts app, touch and hold a contact.
2. Tap **The Add to Favorites icon**.

### Related information

[Add a contact or number to your speed dial list,33](#)

## Contact someone

1. Touch and hold a contact.
2. Tap how you want to reach the contact.

### Related information

[Add a contact or number to your speed dial list,33](#)

## Set a custom ring tone for a contact

1. In the Contacts app, tap a contact.
2. Tap **The Edit icon**.
3. At the bottom of the **Edit Contact** screen, tap **Ring Tone and Notifications**.

4. Tap a notification type, and make your changes.
5. Tap **Back**.
6. Tap **Save**.

## Search for a contact

Like other apps on your BlackBerry device, the Contacts app has a search feature that lets you quickly find the contact that you're looking for.

In the Contacts app, tap **Search**.

- To search contacts from your contact list, just start typing. When the contact appears, tap the contact.
- To search contacts from a remote address book (for example, your company's address book), type the contact's name. Tap **Remote Search**.

## Filtering contacts

There are different ways to change which contacts you see in your contact list.

### View contacts by account or type

You can quickly filter your contact list, to see only specific contacts (for example, BPM or contact groups).

1. In the Contacts app, tap **The More icon**.
2. Tap the type of contacts that you want to see.

### Hide a set of contacts

You can completely remove a type of account from your contact list. For example, if you mainly follow celebrities on Twitter, you might not want to see them in your contact list.

1. In the Contacts app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings**.
3. In the **Show Account in Contact List** section, turn off the switch that appears beside an account.

## Sort your contacts in the Contacts app

By default, your contacts are sorted by first name, but you can also sort by last name or company name.

1. In the Contacts app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **The Settings icon**.

3. In the **Sort Contacts by** drop-down list, tap a sort option.

## Share a contact

You can share a contact's details with others in vcard format. This is like passing around a business card, but digitally.

1. In the Contacts app, touch and hold a contact.
2. Tap **Share Contact**.

## Troubleshooting: Contacts

### My contacts weren't merged automatically

Your BlackBerry device automatically merges contacts when it's clear that those contacts are the same person (for example, they share the same first and last name, mobile phone number, BlackBerry ID, and so on). If you still see duplicate entries in your contact list, you can merge those contacts into one entry.

1. In the Contacts app, touch and hold a contact.
2. Tap **Select More**.
3. Tap the contacts that you want to merge.
4. Tap **The Link Contacts icon**.

### My contacts' pictures change sometimes

If you added a social networking account to your BlackBerry device and you're using a profile picture as a contact's picture, then the picture changes when your contact changes his or her profile picture.

### I have duplicate contact entries

If you imported contact entries using BlackBerry Link, you might see duplicate entries on your device after syncing your device and computer.

You can remove duplicates by merging contacts on your device, or by clearing your local data on your device.

To remove duplicate contact entries by deleting your local device data, do the following:

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **The Settings icon** **Settings > Accounts**.
3. Tap **The More actions icon**.
4. Tap **Clear Local Contacts**.

**CAUTION:** Clearing your local data will permanently delete any contact entries that you saved just locally to your device.

# Clock

The Clock app is made up of four screens. On the Alarm Clock screen, you can turn your alarm on or off, set your alarm time, and add multiple alarms. On the World Clock screen, you can view the time in other parts of the world. You can also use the stopwatch and set a timer from the Clock app.

## Keyboard shortcuts: Clock

### Using the stopwatch

- To start or stop the stopwatch, press **the Space key**.
- To reset the stopwatch and clear lap results, press **the Delete key**.

### Using the timer

- To start or stop the timer, press **the Space key**.
- To reset the timer, press **the Delete key**.

## Setting the alarm clock

### Set an alarm

1. Tap **The Alarm Clock icon**.
2. Set the **Alarm** switch to **On**.
3. Touch and hold the dial outside of the clock face.
4. Slide the dial around the clock face to your desired time.
5. To save the alarm time, tap anywhere on the screen.

**Tip:** The dial allows you to set the alarm for five-minute increments. To set the alarm for a specific minute, tap the alarm time at the bottom of the screen. Tap the **Alarm Time** drop-down list and scroll up or down to adjust the time that the alarm is set for.

## Set additional alarms

You can set multiple alarms to go off on the same day, or you can set additional alarms to go off on different days at different times. You can keep track of all the alarms you set by naming them, and you can set a different alarm tone, recurrence, and snooze duration for each alarm.

1. Tap **the Alarm Clock icon**.
2. Do one of the following:
  - If you only have one alarm set, tap **the Add Alarm icon**.
  - If you already have two or more alarms set, tap **the Alarm List icon** > **the Add Alarm icon**.
3. Type an alarm name.
4. Set an alarm time, recurrence, tone, and snooze duration.
5. Tap **Save**.

**Tip:** Once you've set multiple alarms, you can quickly adjust the different alarm times by touching and holding any of the dials outside of the clock face and sliding the dial around the clock face to your desired time.

## Manage your additional alarms

1. Tap **the Alarm Clock icon** > **the Alarm List icon**.
2. Do any of the following:
  - To turn on or off an alarm, next to the alarm, set the switch to **On** or **Off**.
  - To change the alarm name, time, tone, recurrence, or snooze duration, tap an alarm.
  - To delete an alarm, touch and hold an alarm. Tap **the Delete icon**.

## Change your alarm tone

1. Do one of the following:
  - If you have one alarm set, tap **the Alarm Clock icon**.
  - If you have multiple alarms set, tap **the Alarm List icon**.
2. Tap an alarm.
3. Tap **Alarm Tone**.
4. Select one of the alarm tone options.

**Tip:** To use music you have added or downloaded to your BlackBerry device, tap **the Add Music icon**.

## Set an alarm for multiple days

1. Do one of the following:
  - If you have one alarm set, tap **the Alarm Clock icon**.
  - If you have multiple alarms set, tap **the Alarm List icon**.
2. Tap an alarm.
3. Tap **Recurrence**.
  - To set a daily alarm, set the **Daily** switch to **On**.
  - To set an alarm to recur on specific days, select the checkbox next to one or more days.

## Set the snooze

1. Do one of the following:
  - If you have one alarm set, tap **the Alarm Clock icon**.
  - If you have multiple alarms set, tap **the Alarm List icon**.
2. Tap an alarm.
3. Tap **Snooze**.
4. Select a length of time.

## Stopwatch

1. Tap **Stopwatch**.
2. Tap **Start**.
3. To start a new lap, tap **Lap**.

To view your lap times, swipe from right to left.

## Timer

### Set the timer

1. Tap **Timer**.
2. Touch and hold the dial outside of the clock face.
3. Slide the dial around the clock face to your desired time.
4. Tap **Start**.

**Tip:** The dial allows you to set the timer in one-minute increments. To set the timer for a specific minute and second, tap the time that appears in the middle of the clock face. Scroll up or down to adjust the hours, minutes, and seconds that the timer is set for.

## Change your timer tone

1. Tap **Timer**.
2. In the middle of the clock face, tap the time.
3. Tap **Timer Tone**.
4. Tap a timer tone.

**Tip:** To use music you have added or downloaded to your BlackBerry device, tap **Add Music**.

## World clock

If you're a frequent traveller or if you have friends and family in different parts of the world, you can add cities to the world clock screen to quickly see the time in a variety of cities around the world.

### Add a city to the world clock screen

1. Tap **World clock**.
2. Tap **Add**.
3. Enter a location.
4. Tap a city.

**Tip:** After you add a city to the world clock screen, tap the city name to check the weather in that city.

### Delete a city from the world clock screen

1. Tap **The World clock icon**.
2. Touch and hold a city.
3. Beside a city, tap **the Delete icon**.

## Turn on bedside mode

When bedside mode is on, you are not notified of new messages, but any alarms that you have set will sound and your BlackBerry device displays the time, dimly lit. You can also set the option to hear only phone calls when in bedside mode.

1. In the Clock app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **The Bedside mode icon**.



**Tip:** When your alarm goes off in bedside mode, you can tap anywhere on the screen to snooze the alarm. To turn off the alarm in bedside mode, swipe up from the bottom of the screen.

## Change your bedside mode settings

By default, all of your notifications are set to silent in bedside mode, and your wireless connections stay turned on. When in bedside mode, you can choose to hear only phone calls, or you can choose to turn off all wireless connections.

1. In the Clock app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **the Clock Settings icon**.
3. Do any of the following:
  - To turn on only your phone while in bedside mode, set the **Phone Calls in Bedside Mode** switch to **On**.
  - To turn off all wireless connections in bedside mode, set the **Wireless Connections in Bedside Mode** switch to **Off**.

## Change the clock face

1. In the Clock app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **the Clock Settings icon**.
3. Tap the **Clock Face** drop-down list.
4. Tap a clock face type.

# BlackBerry World

Find and download your favorite apps, games, music, and videos with BlackBerry World! You can browse featured and top downloaded items, browse items by category, and search by keyword. You can also read and write reviews and recommend apps to others.

For more information on BlackBerry World, see the [BlackBerry World User Guide](#).

## Search for apps, games, music, or videos

You can search the entire BlackBerry World storefront, or you can choose to search for a specific type of item. For example, you can choose to only search for games, apps, music, or videos.

- To search the entire BlackBerry World storefront, on the BlackBerry World home screen, tap **Search**.

- To search in a specific section (apps, games, music, or videos), tap **All** . Tap a section. Tap **Search** .
- To search using a recent search term, tap **Search** . Tap a recent search term.

## Browse categories

The BlackBerry World storefront is divided into four sections: games, apps, music, and videos. Within each section is a list of categories or genres. For example, in the games section, you can find categories such as arcade games, card games, and sports games.

1. On the BlackBerry World home screen, tap **All** .
2. Tap **Games, Apps, Music, or Video**.
3. Tap **Categories** .
4. Tap a category or genre.

**Tip:** After you browse to a category of apps or games, you can filter the list of apps or games to show only free items, items for sale, or items with a specific star rating. You can also sort the list by name, price, rating, or popularity. To sort or filter the apps or games in a category, touch and hold the name of a list, drag your finger down, and tap any of the drop-down lists.

## Scan a QR code

If you see a QR code, you can scan it to find a specific item in the BlackBerry World storefront. QR codes commonly appear on websites, posters, or other promotional materials.

1. In the BlackBerry World storefront, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Scan Barcode** .

## Clear your search history

1. On the BlackBerry World storefront home screen, tap **Search** .
2. Tap **More Actions** > **Clear search history** .

## Turn on private browsing

You can turn on private browsing if you don't want your recent search terms to appear on your Search screen or you don't want your recently viewed items displayed on the My World screen.

1. In the BlackBerry World storefront, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **The Settings icon** > **General**.
3. Set the **Private Browsing** switch to **On**.

**Note:** After you turn on private browsing, your saved searches and recently viewed items aren't displayed. However, when private browsing is turned off, your saved searches and recently viewed items are restored.

## Download and buy apps, games, music, and videos

Apps, games, and music that you buy can be deleted and downloaded again as many times as you want to on the same BlackBerry device, and on up to four additional devices without your having to pay for the items again.

1. In the BlackBerry World storefront, tap on item.
2. In the upper-right corner of the screen, tap the button with the price displayed on it.
3. To change your payment method before you pay for an item, in the **Bill Through:** drop-down list, tap a payment method.
4. Tap **Purchase**.

**Tip:** To share an app, game, album, song, or video, tap **Share**. To share an app with someone using NFC technology, on the **Details** screen of the app that you want to share, align the backs of your devices.

## Buy a subscription to an app or a game

You might be required to pay a recurring subscription fee for some apps and games, or for certain features and additional items within an app or game that you have already downloaded. Your subscription automatically renews until you cancel it. The BlackBerry World storefront is designed to send you a reminder email before and after each subscription is renewed.

On the **Details** screen for an app, a game, or an item, tap the button with the price displayed on it.

## Cancel a subscription

1. On the BlackBerry World storefront home screen, tap **All > My World > My Apps & Games**.
2. At the top of the screen, if necessary, tap the **Apps & Games** drop-down list.
3. Tap **Subscriptions**.
4. Tap an app, a game, or an item.
5. Tap **Unsubscribe**.

## Rent a video

Some videos are available to rent from the BlackBerry World storefront. When you download a rented video, you have 30 days to start watching it before the rented video expires. Once you start watching it, depending on the video, you have 24 to 48 hours to finish watching it before the rented video expires. You can only watch a rented video on the BlackBerry device that you downloaded it on.

On the **Details** screen for a video, tap **Rent**.

## Redeem a promo code

1. In BlackBerry World, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **the Redeem icon**.
3. Enter the promo code.
4. Complete the instructions on the screen.

## Change your payment options

1. In the BlackBerry World storefront, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings > Payment Options**.
3. Enter your BlackBerry ID password.
4. Select a payment option.
5. Complete the instructions on the screen.

**Tip:** To edit your payment information, tap **Edit**.

## Tutorial: Setting up a credit card on a BlackBerry 10 device

This tutorial provides you with the opportunity to see how to set up a credit card on a BlackBerry 10 device, and then practice doing so.

**Note:** This tutorial is available in English only.

[Start the tutorial for devices with a touch screen keyboard.](#)

[Start the tutorial for devices with a physical keyboard.](#)

<http://docs.blackberry.com/tutorials/creditcard/en>

## Tutorial: Setting up a PayPal account on a BlackBerry 10 device

This tutorial provides you with the opportunity to see how to set up a PayPal Account on a BlackBerry 10 device, and then practice doing so.

**Note:** This tutorial is available in English only.

[Start the tutorial for devices with a touch screen keyboard.](#)

[Start the tutorial for devices with a physical keyboard.](#)

<http://docs.blackberry.com/tutorials/paypal/en>

## Android apps

You can now get apps and games designed for Android smartphones and install them on your BlackBerry device!

### Downloading and installing Android apps on your BlackBerry device

You can find and download Android apps and games from various third-party websites and mobile market apps. Most websites and mobile market apps include an installation button that appears after you download an Android app file. You can also install an app file by opening it in the File Manager app on your BlackBerry device.

If you can't find an app file that you downloaded, you can search for the app name in the File Manager app. Most Android apps include the file name extension **.apk**. To search for all the Android app files that you downloaded, try searching the File Manager app for **.apk**.

#### **CAUTION:**

Apps that you install from sources other than BlackBerry World have not been reviewed by BlackBerry. These apps might pose a risk to your device and personal data. You should only install apps from trusted sources.

While most apps designed for Android smartphones can be installed and opened on BlackBerry devices, some apps might make use of services that are not supported by BlackBerry 10 OS. BlackBerry 10 OS might also replace these services with alternate services (such as mapping services).

If you don't want to accept these potential risks and limitations, you should not install apps from sources other than BlackBerry World.

### Navigating within an Android app

Some of the apps and games that are available in the BlackBerry World storefront are Android apps that were converted to be used on BlackBerry devices. In these apps, you can show or hide an action bar at the bottom of the screen or you can quickly go back to the previous screen.

Do any of the following:

- To see the additional actions that you can perform, in an app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
- To go back to the previous screen, place your finger below and halfway across the screen. Slide your finger diagonally up and to the left.

# Maps and GPS

Keep moving in the right direction with BlackBerry Maps, GPS, and the Compass app. You can search for points of interest, get turn-by-turn directions, and much more.

## Find a place on a map

You can use the GPS feature on your BlackBerry device to search for a location and then view it on a map to see how to get there.

1. In the Maps app, on the **Map** tab, enter an address or a descriptive word, such as "coffee" or "hospital" in the **search** field.
2. Do one of the following:
  - To view all of the search results as pins on the map, tap **Search**.
  - To view a specific search result as a pin on the map, tap a search result.

## Pin a place on a map

Add pins to your map to keep track of where you're going or to mark points of interest.

In the Maps app, on the **Map** tab, touch and hold the place that you want to pin.

To clear all of the pins from a map, on the **Map** tab, tap **The More icon** > **The Clear Map icon**.

## Start turn-by-turn directions

Verify that location services are turned on and that your BlackBerry device has established a GPS connection.

1. In the Maps app, find a place by doing one of the following:
  - On the **Map** tab, search for an address or a place using the **Search** field. In the search results, tap a place.
  - On the **Map** tab, locate a pin on the map. Tap the pin.
  - On the **My Places** tab, tap a place or contact.
2. Tap **the Go icon**.
3. To begin receiving turn-by-turn directions, tap **the Start icon**.

To stop turn-by-turn directions in the map view or detail view, tap **the End Trip icon**. To stop turn-by-turn directions in the street-level view, tap anywhere on the screen > **the End Trip icon**.

## Switch to the map or detail view for turn-by-turn directions

By default, turn-by-turn directions start with the street-level view of the route.

To switch to one of the high-level views, do one of the following:

- To view a list of directions to your destination, tap **the List icon**.
- To view an overview of the route on a map, tap **the Map View icon**.

To return to the street-level view of the route, tap **the Back icon**.

## Show or hide traffic

If traffic data is available, you can display it as you view a map, or view or listen to turn-by-turn directions in the street-level view.

Do one of the following:

- On the **Map** tab, tap **the More icon** > **the Show traffic icon**.
- When viewing or listening to turn-by-turn directions in the street-level view, tap **the More icon** > **the Show traffic icon**.

To hide traffic data, tap **the More icon** > **the Hide traffic icon**.

## Mute voice-guided directions

By default, voice-guided directions are turned on.

1. If you are in the map view or the detail list view, to return to the street-level view, tap **the Navigation icon**.
2. To turn off voice-guided directions, tap **the Mute icon**.

## Avoid toll roads, highways, or ferries on your route

You can change your route preferences while viewing or listening to turn-by-turn directions in BlackBerry Maps.

1. In the Maps app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **the Settings icon** > **Route Options**.
3. Set the switches for the types of things that you want to avoid.

## Recalculate routes

While viewing or listening to turn-by-turn directions, you can manually recalculate your directions when you make a wrong turn or would like alternative directions.

1. If you are in the street-level view, to show the navigation bar, tap the screen.
2. Tap **the More icon** > **the Update route icon**.

## My places

You can find your favorites, recent places, and contacts' places on the **My Places** tab.

### Add a place to your favorites

1. In the Maps app, on the **My Places** tab, tap **The More icon** > **The Add Favorite icon**.
2. On the **Add Favorite** screen, complete the **Place Name** and **Address** fields and confirm that the location is found.
3. If necessary, enter any additional information.
4. Tap **Save**.

**Tip:** You can also add places to your favorites by touching and holding a search result or contact name and tapping **The Add to Favorites icon**.

To remove a place from your favorites, on the **My Places** tab, tap **Favorites**. Touch and hold the place that you want to remove. Tap **The Remove Favorite icon**.

### Change the details for a place

1. In your search results or in a list, tap a place.
2. Tap **More** > **Edit**.
3. Change any fields that require updating.
4. Tap **Save**.

### View your recent places

BlackBerry Maps remembers and organizes the last 100 places that you searched for so that you can quickly access them again.

In the Maps app, on the **My Places** tab, tap **Recents**.

### Clear your recent places

You can clear the list of recently viewed places in BlackBerry Maps.

**Tip:** If you have places that you want to keep so that you don't have to search for them again, add them as a favorite before you permanently clear the list.

1. In the Maps app, swipe down from the top of the screen.



2. Tap **the Settings icon** > **Clear History**.
3. Tap **Clear Recent**.

## View a contact's address on a map

If you have added an address to an entry in the Contacts app, you can view the contact's location on a map and get directions.

1. On the **My Places** tab, tap **Contacts**.
2. Touch and hold a contact's name.
3. Tap **Map**.

## Changing settings for iMaps

### Switch between kilometers or miles

BlackBerry Maps displays distances using either imperial (feet/yards and miles) or metric (meters and kilometers) measurements, as set in your device settings.

1. In the Maps app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** > **Units of Measure**.
3. Tap **Change Device Settings**.

### Change default route settings

If you always want BlackBerry Maps to show you the fastest or shortest route, or want to avoid certain things on your route, such as highways, toll roads, car-sharing lanes, or ferries, you can change your default settings.

1. In the Maps app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** > **Route Options**.

### Switch between voice-guided prompts and tones

BlackBerry Maps can prompt you about upcoming turns using voice directions or tones.

1. In the Maps app, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Settings** > **Navigation Audio**.
3. Tap an option.

## About location services

You can turn on location services so that location-based applications and services, like BlackBerry Maps, can find your location. Location-based applications can use GPS technology and other information to provide you with information, such as driving directions.

## Turn on or turn off location services

Some apps require GPS location information to work as expected.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Location Services**.
3. Tap the **Location Services** switch.

## Change location permissions for apps

You can review and remove any GPS location-related permissions that individual apps have requested. Some apps require specific permissions to work as expected.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Security and Privacy > Application Permissions**.
3. Tap an app.
4. Tap a switch.

## Turn on or turn off location-based ads

If location-based ads are turned on, apps using the Advertising Service can use your GPS location to present more relevant promotional content or deals. No data that personally identifies you is ever shared with third-party advertisers.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Location Services**.
3. Tap the **Location-based Ads** switch.

## Turn on or turn off traffic data

If traffic data is turned on, your BlackBerry device sends anonymous GPS location information to provide traffic data to BlackBerry applications.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.

2. Tap **Image Settings > Location Services**.
3. Tap the **Traffic Data Collection** switch.

## Compass at a glance

### About the compass

The digital compass on your BlackBerry device works like a regular compass, but also includes additional features. For example, you can choose whether the compass points to true north or magnetic north. The compass also works in any direction or orientation, including upside down.

### Point the compass to true north or to magnetic north

You can choose to navigate with your compass based on either true north or magnetic north. Magnetic north, which is what a standard compass points to, can be influenced by several factors and isn't constant. True north, or geographical north, is what you would see on a paper map and is constant. If you would prefer to navigate based on true north (for example, if you are using your compass to follow a map) you must turn on GPS.

In the compass app, do one of the following:

- To navigate based on true north, at the bottom of the screen, set the switch to **On**.
- To navigate based on magnetic north, at the bottom of the screen, set the switch to **Off**.

## Troubleshooting: Compass

### I'm not getting an accurate reading from the compass

Try the following actions:

- If the compass doesn't point north, move your BlackBerry device away from metal objects, such as magnets or electronics.
- If you have turned on Location Services and are navigating based on true north, you need the GPS receiver to be able to connect to satellites. Try moving outside or near a window in order to establish a GPS connection.

## Browser

With the BlackBerry Browser, you can browse the Internet, stream video, switch between multiple tabs, download files, share links to webpages, and more.

# Browsing the Internet

Use the BlackBerry Browser to browse the Internet quickly and conveniently on your BlackBerry device.

## Keyboard shortcuts, Browser

Go forward one page	Press <b>N</b>
Go back one page	Press <b>P</b>
Find text on a page	Press <b>S</b>
Open your bookmarks	Press <b>K</b>
Open your history	Press <b>H</b>
Enter reader mode	Press <b>R</b>
Refresh a web page	Press <b>L</b>
Zoom in	Press <b>I</b>
Zoom out	Press <b>O</b>
Go to the top of a web page	Press <b>T</b>
Go to the bottom of a web page	Press <b>B</b>
Move down the screen	Press <b>The Space key</b> .
Move up the screen	Press <b>The Shift key</b> and <b>The Space key</b> .

## Go to a website

1. Type a web address or search term into the address bar at the bottom of the Browser.
2. Press **The Enter key** .

**Tip:** To maximize your screen space, the address bar disappears after a few seconds. To bring it back, swipe down on the screen.

## Change the current search engine

After you change the search engine, the BlackBerry Browser continues to use the new search engine until you change it again.

1. While you're typing a search term in the Browser, tap the search engine icon in the top right corner of the screen.
2. Tap the search engine that you want to use.

## Add a new search engine

You can add search engines so that they appear in the drop down when you search for a term in the BlackBerry Browser.

**Note:** This feature is not available for some search engines.

1. Navigate to a search page, for example, [www.wikipedia.com](http://www.wikipedia.com).
2. Enter a search term.
3. On the search results page, tap **The More icon** > **The Add Search icon**.
4. Tap **Add**.

## Remove a search engine

1. Open the BlackBerry Browser and type a search term in the search bar.
2. Tap the search engine icon in the top right corner of the screen.
3. Touch and hold a search engine.
4. Tap **The Remove icon**.

## Using Browser tabs

Just like on your computer's browser, you can open multiple webpages in tabs and switch between the tabs quickly.

### Open, switch between, or close tabs

In the BlackBerry Browser, tap **The Tabs icon**.

- To open a tab, tap **The Add New Tab icon**.
- To switch between tabs, tap a tab.
- To close a tab, on the tab that you want to close, tap **The close tab icon**.

**Tip:** Close a tab when you're finished with it to improve the performance of the Browser.

### Open a link in a new tab

1. In the Browser, touch and hold a link.
2. Tap **Open Link in New Tab**.

## Share a link or picture

You can share items on the web through an email, a text message, Facebook, Twitter, BBM, and more.

In the BlackBerry Browser, do one of the following:

- To share the webpage that you're looking at, tap **More actions** > **Share**.
- To share a link or a picture, touch and hold the link or picture. Tap **The Share icon**.

## Search for text on a webpage

On a webpage, tap **More actions** > **Find on Page**.

## View webpages in a reader-friendly format

To help you focus on reading articles or other text on a webpage and remove distracting clutter like ads, you can use the reader mode.

On a webpage, tap **More actions** > **Reader**.

## Change text size in reader mode

Do one of the following:

- To increase the text size, tap **Increase Text**.
- To decrease the text size, tap **Decrease text**.

## Change the background color in reader mode

Tap **The More icon** > **The Invert Colors icon**.

## Find files that you downloaded

After you download a file from the BlackBerry Browser, you can go to the download manager to find it again, open it, and share it.

In the Browser, tap **More actions** > **Downloads**.

## Clear your list of downloaded files

In the Browser, tap **More actions** > **Downloads** > **Clear downloads**.

## Add a website to your home screen

You can create a shortcut to a website on your home screen so that you can quickly go to a website without opening the browser first.

On a website, tap **More actions** > **Add to Home Screen**.

## Save a webpage

You can save a webpage in HTML format so that you can access the webpage when you're offline, or send the webpage as an attachment.

1. On a webpage, tap **The More icon** > **The Save Page icon**.
2. Choose the location that you want to save the webpage in.

## Changing your Browser settings

### Customize the Browser start screen

You can change what you see when you first open the BlackBerry Browser. You can set a specific home page, show thumbnails of the webpages that you visited recently or frequently, or open the webpages that were open in your previous Browser session.

1. In the Browser, tap **The More menu** > **The Settings icon** > **Display and Actions**.
2. Tap the **On Startup Show** drop-down list.
  - To set a specific home page, tap **My Home Page**. Type a web address.
  - To show thumbnails of the webpages that you visited recently or frequently, tap **New Tab Page**.
  - To open the webpages from your previous Browser session, tap **My Tabs From Last Time**.

### Turn on Adobe Flash support

1. In the Browser, tap **More actions** > **Settings** > **Display and Actions**.
2. Turn on the **Adobe Flash** switch.

## Bookmarks and browsing history

Bookmark your favorite webpages so that you can easily access them the next time you use the BlackBerry Browser.

### Bookmark a favorite webpage

On a webpage, tap **More actions** > **Add to Bookmarks**.

### View your Browser bookmarks

In the BlackBerry Browser, tap **The Tabs, Bookmarks, and History icon** > **The Bookmarks icon**.

## View your bookmarks by tags or in a list

1. In the Browser, tap **Tabs, Bookmarks, and History** > **Bookmarks**.
2. Tap **Tags** or **Switch to List**.

## Organizing your bookmarks

It's a good idea to keep your bookmarks organized so that you can more easily find the webpages that you're looking for.

## Change your bookmarks

You can change the name or web address of a bookmark.

1. In the Browser, tap **Tabs, Bookmarks, and History** > **Bookmarks**.
2. Touch and hold a bookmark.
3. Tap **Edit Bookmark**.
4. Type a new name or web address.

## Add, rename, or delete a bookmark tag

Tags help you categorize your bookmarks so that you can find them more quickly. For example, you might want to tag all of your news-related bookmarks with "News", or your favorite blogs with "Blog".

In the Browser, tap **The Tabs, Bookmarks, and History icon** > **The Bookmarks icon**.

- To add a tag, touch and hold a bookmark. Tap **The Edit Bookmark icon**. In the **Add tags** field, type a tag name.
- To rename a tag, tap **Tags**. Touch and hold a tag. Tap **The Edit Tag icon**. Type a new name for the tag.
- To remove a tag from a bookmark, touch and hold a bookmark. Tap **Edit Bookmark**. Tap a tag.
- To delete all instances of a tag, tap **Tags**. Touch and hold a tag. Tap **The Delete icon**.

## Delete a bookmark

1. In the Browser, tap **Tabs, Bookmarks, and History** > **Bookmarks**.
2. Touch and hold a bookmark.
3. Tap **Delete**.

## View your browsing history

1. In the Browser, on a webpage, tap **The Tab icon**.
2. Tap **The History icon**.

To close your browsing history, tap **The Back icon**.



**Tip:** To view a webpage in your history, on a webpage, touch and hold **The Back icon** until your history appears.

## Delete your browsing history

1. In the Browser, tap **The Tab icon**.
2. Tap **The History icon**.
  - To delete all of your browsing history, tap **The Delete icon**.
  - To delete a specific webpage from your browsing history, touch and hold the thumbnail for the webpage. Tap **The Delete icon**.

## Browsing safely

To help you browse safely, you can check the certificates for a website, change the security settings, and change permissions for specific websites in the BlackBerry Browser.

### About website certificates

Certificates help verify that a website is legitimate. Websites that require more security, such as banking sites, use certificates to help prove authenticity. If a website has a certificate, certificate icons appear beside the web address bar.

### Website certificate icons

Icon	Description
EV certificate icon	The website's identity has been verified by an extended validation certificate from a trusted certificate authority.
DV certificate icon	The website's identity has been verified by a domain-validated certificate from a trusted certificate authority.
mixed certificate icon	Some parts of the website are secure while other parts of the website are not.
unknown certificate icon	The website might be unsafe because the certificate is unknown.

## Change Browser security settings

In the Browser, tap **More actions** > **Settings** > **Privacy and Security**.

### Security settings

**Remove History Items**

Specify how often your BlackBerry device automatically deletes the browsing information from your BlackBerry Browser history.

### Private Browsing

Keep your browsing information (your history, cached files, cookies, and so on) only while a browsing session is open. When you close the Browser, the information is automatically deleted.

### Block Pop-ups

Choose whether or not to allow pop-up windows to appear in your browsing session.

### Accept Cookies

Let websites use cookies to send and receive information between the website and the Browser. Cookies can be helpful because websites can use them to remember information about your preferences and user information, but cookies can pose a privacy risk as well.

### Clear Cookies and Other Data

Clear all of your saved Browser information.

### Clear History

Clear your Browser history.

## Change permissions for specific websites

As you browse the Internet, you might grant permissions to allow websites to access information, such as your location. You can remove those permissions at any time.

1. In the Browser, tap **More actions** > **Settings** > **Site Permissions**.
2. Tap a website. Tap **Edit**.
3. Tap **Delete** beside the permissions that you want to remove.
4. Tap **Done**.

## Troubleshooting: Browser

### I can't watch a video online

While you can stream many videos from the web on your BlackBerry device, some video formats aren't supported, and some websites block content from being viewed on mobile devices. For more information about supported video formats, search the Help.

# The Smart Tags application explained

The Smart Tags app takes bits of information and transforms the info into a smart tag. Info can include text, websites and other URIs, phone numbers, email addresses and connection information. You can copy the smart tag to an NFC tag, display it as a QR Code, or you can pass the smart tag directly to another BlackBerry device. The Smart Tags app allows you to store the smart tags that you receive and use them or pass them on later.

Instead of handing out business cards, try creating your own smart tag that contains your contact information so that with just a click, recipients can call, text, or send you an email. Have an event coming up? Try making a smart tag that contains the event information, then copying the smart tag to a writeable NFC tag that is attached to a small gift for your guests.

The NFC feature might not be available, depending on your wireless service provider, your administrator's settings, and your BlackBerry device model.

## Scan a QR Code, barcode, or an NFC tag

The NFC feature might not be available, depending on your wireless service provider, your administrator's settings, and your BlackBerry device model.

When you scan a QR Code or barcode by using the Smart Tags app, your device saves the information as a smart tag.

When you scan an NFC tag, your device opens the information in the corresponding application type. You can save the information as a smart tag by opening the Smart Tags app before you scan the NFC tag.

Do any of the following:

- To scan a QR Code or barcode, open the Smart Tags app. Tap **The scan icon**. Tap **The scan QR Code icon** or **The scan barcode icon**. Hold your device so that all four corners of the QR Code or barcode appear on your screen.
- To scan an NFC tag, tap the back of your device against the NFC tag.

BlackBerry 10 device showing the back of the device directly above an NFC tag. Blue circles indicate a data exchange.

## Delete a smart tag from your device

1. In the Smart Tags app, highlight one or more tags that you want to delete.
2. Tap **Delete**.

# Create your own smart tag

The NFC feature might not be available, depending on your wireless service provider, your administrator's settings, and your BlackBerry device model.

You can create your own smart tag to share with other devices, save to an NFC tag, or display as a QR Code.

1. In the Smart Tags app, tap **The create icon**.
2. Tap a tag type.
3. In the fields that appear on the screen, enter the necessary information.

**Tip:** You can group multiple tags together. Press and hold an existing tag. Tap **Add**. Repeat Steps 2 and 3 to create a tag.

## Smart tag types

### Web

Use to create a smart tag that, when opened, takes you to a webpage.

### Smart Triggers

Use to create a smart tag that, when written to an NFC tag and then tapped on, can trigger various settings on your BlackBerry device.

### Wi-Fi

Use to create a smart tag that, when written to an NFC tag and then tapped on, connects you to a specified Wi-Fi network.

### Bluetooth

Use to create a smart tag that, when written to an NFC tag and then tapped on, pairs you with a specified Bluetooth enabled device.

### Contact

Use to create a smart tag that, when opened, adds the contact information in the Contacts app.

### Event

Use to create a smart tag that, when opened, creates an appointment in the Calendar app.

### Geo Location

Use to create a smart tag that, when opened, searches for directions in the Maps application.

### Phone

Use to create a smart tag that, when opened, calls a phone number.

### Email

Use to create a smart tag that, when opened, composes an email. When you create the tag you can fill in the Subject and Message fields to prepopulate these fields when the tag is opened, or you can leave these fields blank.

## Text Message

Use to create a smart tag that, when opened, composes a text message (SMS or MMS). When you create the tag you can fill in the Message field to prepopulate this field when the tag is opened, or you can leave this field blank.

## Text

Use to create a smart tag that displays a message.

## Other

Use to create a smart tag that identifies a resource by using your own URI (Uniform Resource Identifier). For example, if you create your own application for the BlackBerry device, you can use this tag type to create a smart tag for your app.

# Favorite a smart tag

You can make smart tags easier to find if you mark them as favorites.

1. In the Smart Tags app, find and highlight the tag that you want to favorite.
2. Tap **The add to favorites icon**.

## View your favorite smart tags

In the Smart Tags app, tap **The More Tags icon** > **The favorites icon**.

# Share a smart tag

The NFC feature might not be available, depending on your wireless service provider, your administrator's settings, and your BlackBerry device model.

In the Smart Tags app, highlight a tag.

- To display the smart tag as a QR Code for another device to scan, tap **The show as barcode icon**.
- To share the smart tag through a message, such as an email or text message, or to share the smart tag with an application, such as BlackBerry Remember, tap **Share**. Tap a message type or application.
- To send the smart tag to another NFC-enabled BlackBerry device, tap **Share** > **NFC**. Align the backs of the devices.
- To copy the smart tag to a writable NFC tag, tap **The write to NFC tag icon**. Tap your device against the NFC tag.

**Tip:** NFC tags are often sold as stickers. If you copy your smart tag to an NFC tag sticker, you can stick your smart tags nearly anywhere.

## Lock a smart tag

The NFC feature might not be available, depending on your wireless service provider, your administrator's settings, and your BlackBerry device model.

If you copy a smart tag to a writable NFC tag and you plan to leave the NFC tag in a public space, you should lock the NFC tag to prevent tampering. When an NFC tag is locked it can't be unlocked, changed, or erased.

1. In the Smart Tags app, tap **More > The lock NFC tag icon**.
2. Align the back of your BlackBerry device with the tag.

## Change a smart tag title

1. In the Smart Tags app, press and hold a smart tag.
2. Tap **The Edit title icon**.
3. Enter a title.
4. Tap **Save**.

## Erase smart tag information from an NFC tag

The NFC feature might not be available, depending on your wireless service provider, your administrator's settings, and your BlackBerry device model.

If the NFC tag isn't locked, you can erase the smart tag information that is stored on it.

1. In the Smart Tags app, tap **More > Erase NFC tag**.
2. Align the back of your BlackBerry device with an NFC tag.

## Search your device

When you search your BlackBerry device from the home screen, your results are categorized by file type and application type. If you search from within an application, your results are limited to items within the application.

1. Enter your search terms.
2. To see all of the results for a particular category, in the lower right corner of the category, tap **The expand icon**.

**Tip:** If you search from within an application, you need to tap **The search icon** before you enter your search terms.

## Filter your search results

If you know the type of file you're looking for, you can use the search filter to narrow your results. It doesn't matter whether you turn on the search filter before or after you start your search. The filter is cleared the next time you enter search terms.

1. In the Search application, tap the icon that appears beside the text entry field.
2. Tap the category that you want search results for.

**Tip:** If you want to find an email that you received from a particular person, instead of searching from the home screen and using the search filter for the **Email** category, try searching from the BlackBerry Hub and selecting the **From** category.

## Do more with your search results

There are a variety of actions you can perform with items in your search results right in the search results screen. The actions available to you depend on what the item is. For example, if one of the search results is an email, you can reply, forward, flag, and so on without opening the email.

1. Touch and hold a search result.
2. Tap an action.

**Tip:** The actions you can perform appear as icons on the right side of your screen. To see the names of the icons, slide your finger over them.

## Change your search settings

You can specify whether your BlackBerry device stores your search history, which categories to include in searches, and which search engines to use to extend your searches to the Internet. You can also clear your search history from this screen.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Search**.
3. Tap the settings you want to change.
4. Change your search settings.

## File Manager

You can use File Manager to view, save, zip, and share files and folders on your BlackBerry device. You can also access files that are saved in the cloud.

## Viewing files

### View files on your device

File Manager helps you view, save and share files on your BlackBerry device. To view a file in File Manager:

1. Tap a folder.
2. Tap a file that you want to view.

To go back, tap **Back**.

**Tip:** If BlackBerry Balance is enabled on your device and you want to access your work files, on the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap **Work**.

## View files on connected devices or networks

You can view files on devices that are connected to your BlackBerry device, such as a media card or a device connected by a USB cable. If you are logged in to a cloud application on your device, you can also access files stored in the cloud. To access a file stored on another device:

1. Tap **Device**.
2. Tap a device.

Files and folders stored on the selected device appear in File Manager when opened or when viewed.

## Managing your files

### Rename a file or folder

File Manager allows you to make changes to file and folder names, such as fixing a typo or word. To rename a file or folder:

1. Touch and hold a file or folder.
2. Tap **Rename**.

**Tip:** To change a file type, touch and hold a file. Tap **Properties** > **Edit**.

### Add a folder

When you open File Manager, a list of pre-defined folders appears. To add a folder, do the following:

1. Navigate to where you want to add a new folder.
2. Tap **More**.
3. Tap **Add Folder**.

**Note:** You might not have pre-defined folders on a connected device.

### Search for an item in File Manager

1. Tap **Search**.
2. Enter all, or part, of the name of the item you are searching for.



**Note:** To search for an item on a connected device, you must perform the search when the device is open in File Manager.

## Sort files and folders

You can view your files and folders in order by name, date, type or size. You can also decide whether to view your files and folders in ascending or descending order.

**Tip:** To change the way you view your files and folders, tap **List** to view them as a list or **Grid** to view them as a grid.

Tap **More** > **Sort**.

- To change the way files and folders are sorted, tap **Sort** > **Name**, **Date**, **Type**, or **Size**.
- To change the order of your files and folders, tap **Order** > **Ascending**, or **Descending**.

## Select multiple files

1. Tap **More**.
2. Tap **Select**.
3. Tap the items that you want to select.

To deselect an item that you have tapped in error, tap the item again.

## Transferring files

### Share files

1. Touch and hold a file.
2. Tap **Share**.
3. Choose a destination.

**Tip:** To share multiple files, tap **More** > **Select**. Tap the files you want to share. Tap **Share**.

### Move a file

1. Touch and hold a file or folder.
2. Tap **Move**.
3. Navigate to where you want to move the file.
4. Tap **Move**.

## Copy a file

1. Touch and hold a file or folder.
2. Tap **Copy**.
3. Navigate to where you want to copy the file or folder.
4. Tap **Paste**.

## Working with files stored in the cloud

### Retrieve files saved to the cloud

If you are logged in to a cloud application on your BlackBerry device, you can use File Manager to access files that you have stored in the cloud. To retrieve a file you have saved to the cloud:

1. Tap **Device**.
2. Tap a cloud application.

### Save a file to your device

When you pin a file it is saved to your BlackBerry device, so you can view the file even when you're not connected to a mobile or wireless network. If a file is not pinned, it is not available when you're offline. To pin or unpin a file to your device:

Touch and hold a file that is stored in a cloud application

- To pin a file, tap **Pin**.
- To unpin a file, tap **Unpin**.

### Synchronize a file with the cloud

If you have edited a pinned file while offline, you can use the Sync Now option when you reconnect to a wireless network to ensure that the file is synchronized with the cloud before other files are synchronized. To force the synchronization of a file:

1. Touch and hold a file.
2. Tap **The Sync Now icon**. If this option isn't available to you in the menu, your file is synchronized with the cloud.

**Tip:** To stop synchronizing, tap **The more icon** > **Pause Sync**. To start synchronizing again, tap **The more icon** > **Resume Sync**.

## Create a link for a file

Instead of sending a file as an attachment, you can create a link to the file to share it.

1. Touch and hold a file.
2. Tap **Share Link**.
3. If you receive a prompt to select the access level, tap **Access** to limit who can open the link. Tap **Share Link**.
4. Tap a location or message type for sharing.

## Change cloud application settings

You can change your settings for items like the back up options and network usage for your cloud applications. When you enable back up options, changes to files in the selected applications are automatically updated and stored in the cloud. To change your settings:

1. Tap **More**.
2. Tap **Settings**.

Tapping **Settings** launches the cloud application.

## Working with zip files

### Zip files and folders

Zip your files to help reduce memory space. You can zip a single file or folder, or zip multiple files or folders. You can also zip all of the files in a particular folder using the Zip All option.

Touch and hold a file or folder.

- To zip a single file or folder, tap **Zip**.
- To zip multiple files or folders, tap **Select**. Tap the files or folders you want to zip, then tap **Zip**.

### Unzip a file

You can unzip files, and also preview their contents. When you unzip a file, a folder is created with the same name as the zip file. The unzipped contents can be viewed in this folder.

- To unzip a file, touch and hold a zip file. Tap **Unzip**.
- To preview the contents of a zip file, tap the file.

# Calculator

The calculator on your BlackBerry device combines a scientific and standard calculator into one. You can also use the calculator to convert a unit of measurement, calculate a tip, and see previous calculations.

## Calculator at a glance

### View your previous calculations

To view your previous calculations, slide your finger down in the answer field.

To clear all of your previous calculations, tap **Delete**.

### Calculate a tip

When you're out at a restaurant, you can use the tip calculator to figure out how much to leave for a tip. You can customize your calculations to specify the number of people included on the bill and the percentage of the bill that you want to tip. The tip calculator can also calculate how much each person owes on a bill, making it easy to divide up a bill amongst a table of people.

1. Tap **Tip**.
2. In **The Bill** field, enter the total amount of the bill.
3. If necessary, change any of the additional tip options.

### Convert a unit of measurement

You can use the calculator on your BlackBerry device to convert one unit of measurement to another. The calculator includes many different types and units of measurement for the different kinds of scenarios that you find yourself in, so you don't need to stop what you're doing to convert measurements.

1. Tap **Converter**.
2. Choose a measurement type, the unit to convert from, and the unit to convert to.
3. Enter the value that you want to convert.

## Switch to a scientific or standard calculator

You can switch the type of calculator that you are using by swiping left and right on your BlackBerry device.

On the calculator screen, swipe left or right on the keypad.

## BlackBerry Virtual Expert

The BlackBerry Virtual Expert app guides you through troubleshooting tests that are designed to help you identify a hardware-related problem.

## Testing your device hardware

You can check that your device hardware is working properly by using the BlackBerry Virtual Expert app. [Download the BlackBerry Virtual Expert app from BlackBerry World now.](#)

Before you use the app, keep the accessories you use with your device on hand, such as headphones, so that you can do a full assessment.

Depending on your device model, you can check the following components and functions on your device:

- Touch screen and LCD
- Keyboard
- Volume keys, Mute key, and Power/Lock key
- Camera
- Speakers, microphone, and headphone jack
- LED and vibration notifications
- Bluetooth technology

**Tip:** For help with a specific issue, contact your service provider.

## Test your device using the BlackBerry Virtual Expert app

1. In the BlackBerry Virtual Expert app, do one of the following:
  - To test a type of functionality, tap **Display Tests**, **Audio Tests**, or **Button Tests**.
  - To perform a specific test, such as a camera issue, tap **Find Tests icon**. Tap the test you want to do.
2. Follow the instructions on the screen.

## A BlackBerry Virtual Expert test failed

If the BlackBerry Virtual Expert app indicates a problem with your device, do the following:

- If possible, back up the data on your device. You can use BlackBerry Link to save a backup on your computer. To download BlackBerry Link, on your computer, visit [www.blackberry.com/BlackBerryLink](http://www.blackberry.com/BlackBerryLink) and select the Windows or Mac option.
- Note your device software version and PIN number. To find this information, from the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap **Settings** > **About**. In the **Category** drop-down list, tap **OS** or **Hardware**.
- Contact your wireless service provider or local repair center about the issue.

# Productivity and work

## Switch between your personal space and work space

When BlackBerry Balance technology is set up on your BlackBerry device, you can quickly switch between your personal space and work space.

**Tip:** To differentiate between your personal space and work space, you can set a different wallpaper for your personal space.

1. From the home screen, to switch between spaces, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap **Switch to Personal** or **Switch to Work**.
2. From your personal space or work space, do any of the following:
  - To switch between your personal pictures and work pictures, in the Pictures app, tap **The More icon**. Tap **Open Personal Pictures** or **Open Work Pictures**.
  - To switch between your personal files and work files, in Adobe Reader, Documents To Go, or File Manager, tap **The More Tabs icon**. Tap **Personal Space** or **Work Space**.

When you switch between personal files and work files, the app opens a second instance of the application in the personal space or work space you are currently in.

## About BlackBerry Balance and your work space

BlackBerry Balance technology helps address corporate security concerns without limiting personal use of your BlackBerry device. If your administrator turns on BlackBerry Balance, the device data, apps, and network access are separated so that you have a work space and a personal space. The separate spaces help you avoid activities such as accidentally copying work data into a personal app, or displaying confidential work data during a BBM Video chat. If your administrator turns on BlackBerry Balance, your administrator can also specify security policies that turn on and turn off features on your device. For information about the security policies set on your device, contact your administrator.

By default, your device uses the personal space. You can it use for activities such as taking pictures, downloading videos, playing games online, saving files to a media card, and posting on a social network.

In your work space, you can access your work email, contacts, and calendar, create work documents, and browse to corporate intranet sites. Your work space can include a separate version of BlackBerry World that contains the applications

you are allowed to download and use at work. If your work space is protected with a password, you must unlock your work space to reveal the details about your work data.

You can access both personal data and work data from certain places, such as Search.

## Lock your work space

If your BlackBerry device uses BlackBerry Balance technology to separate your work and personal activity, you can lock your work space and continue to access personal files, personal apps, and personal data in the personal space on your device.

1. If you don't have a work space password, to create one, on the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap **Image Settings > BlackBerry Balance > Set Password**. Type a password.
2. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
  - To immediately lock your work space, tap **The Briefcase icon**.
  - To automatically lock your work space after a set amount of time, tap **Image Settings > BlackBerry Balance**. In the **Lock Work Space After** drop-down list, select a time interval.

Take care to remember your work space password. If you forget your password, contact your administrator to have it reset. If you exceed the number of allowed attempts to enter your work space password, your work space and all of its contents are deleted.

## Change your work space password

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > BlackBerry Balance > Change Password**.
3. To unlock your work space and BlackBerry device using the same password, turn on the **Use as my device password** switch.

Take care to remember your work space password. If you forget your password, contact your administrator to have it reset. If you exceed the number of allowed attempts to enter your work space password, your work space and all of its contents are deleted.

## Delete your work space

If you no longer want to associate your device with your organization's network, you can remove only your work space. The apps and files stored in your personal space are left intact.

**CAUTION:** Deleting the work space will permanently erase all of the content and files stored within it, such as work files, messages, pictures, and videos. To add a work account back to your device, you will need to contact your administrator.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > BlackBerry Balance > The Delete Work Space icon**.




3. Type **blackberry**.

**Tip:** If you plan to give away or recycle your device, remember to delete all of the data on your device by performing a security wipe, and remove your SIM card and media card.

## Does my device have BlackBerry Balance?

BlackBerry Balance is available only on BlackBerry devices associated with the BlackBerry Enterprise Service 10.

To confirm if your device uses BlackBerry Balance, do one of the following:

- On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. If you see **Switch to Work** or **Switch to Personal**, BlackBerry Balance is installed.
- On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap  **Settings** > **About**. In the **Category** drop-down list, scroll and look for **Work Space**. If you don't see that or you see **Work Space Only**, your device isn't set up to use BlackBerry Balance.

## How do I set up BlackBerry Balance?

Your administrator must set up BlackBerry Balance and associate your work account with the BlackBerry Enterprise Service 10. After your admin sets up BlackBerry Balance, a work space is automatically added to your BlackBerry device and you are prompted to finish the activation.

For more information about the BlackBerry Enterprise Service 10, visit [blackberry.com/business.html](http://blackberry.com/business.html) and [docs.blackberry.com](http://docs.blackberry.com).

## What content is in my work space and my personal space?

If your administrator turns on BlackBerry Balance technology, the device data, apps, and network access are separated so that you have a work space and a personal space on your BlackBerry device.

Work apps that are open appear with a **Briefcase** icon on the home screen.

Depending on the rules set by your administrator, some apps and features might be available in your work space, personal space, or both. The table below describes the default behavior for most apps.

Description	Apps
These apps and features are available only in your work space and display work data.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>BlackBerry Work Drives</li><li>BlackBerry World for Work</li><li>Enterprise Mail</li></ul>

Description	Apps
<p>These apps and features are available only in your personal space and display personal data.</p> <p>Depending on the rules set by your administrator, you might have access to work contacts in the Phone, BBM, and text messaging apps.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• BBM</li><li>• BlackBerry Protect</li><li>• BlackBerry Story Maker</li><li>• BlackBerry World</li><li>• Box</li><li>• Calculator</li><li>• Camera</li><li>• Clock</li><li>• Compass</li><li>• Dropbox</li><li>• Evernote</li><li>• Facebook</li><li>• Games</li><li>• Foursquare</li><li>• LinkedIn</li><li>• Media card</li><li>• Music</li><li>• Phone</li><li>• SIM card</li><li>• Smart Tags</li><li>• BlackBerry Story Maker</li><li>• Text messaging (SMS and MMS)</li><li>• Twitter</li><li>• Video camera</li><li>• Videos</li><li>• Voice Activated Dialing</li><li>• Weather</li><li>• YouTube</li></ul>
<p>These apps and features are available in your work space and personal space. Your work data and personal data are displayed together.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• BlackBerry Hub</li><li>• BlackBerry Intelligent Assistant</li><li>• BlackBerry Remember</li><li>• Calendar</li><li>• Contacts</li></ul>
<p>These apps are available in your work space and personal space. Depending on which space you open an app in, you</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Adobe Reader</li></ul>

Description	Apps
can access either your work data or personal data. You can open two instances of these apps at the same time.  Depending on the rules set by your administrator, some apps might not appear in your work space.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• BlackBerry Maps</li><li>• BlackBerry Browser</li><li>• Documents To Go</li><li>• File Manager</li><li>• Pictures</li><li>• Voice Control</li></ul>

## Can I use personal apps on my work's network?

If your administrator turns on BlackBerry Balance technology, depending on the rules set by your administrator, you or your administrator can allow work apps to access your organization's Wi-Fi or VPN network.

On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap **Image Settings > BlackBerry Balance**. If the **Allow Personal Apps to Use Work Networks** switch is on, you can use personal apps on your organization's network.

If personal apps aren't allowed to use your organization's networks and if a personal network isn't available, personal apps that need access to the Internet might not work.

## Where is my picture that I just took?

If your BlackBerry device uses BlackBerry Balance technology, attachments saved from work email messages are only accessible in the work space. Any pictures taken using your device camera, whether you opened the Camera app from your work or personal space, are stored in your personal space. All of your media card files are also stored in your personal space.

For example, since BBM is a personal app, to create a profile picture, you can use a picture taken with your camera, but you can't use a picture that you downloaded from an email message sent to your work account.

## What happens to my device data if I leave my organization?

If your administrator turns on BlackBerry Balance technology, your administrator can delete your work data from the work space on your BlackBerry device and leave your personal data and applications intact in the personal space. If you store personal data within work apps, for example you add a personal contact to the Contacts app in your work space, that personal data is deleted from your device when your administrator deletes your work space.

Your administrator can delete all of your device data, including your personal content. This feature helps to secure your device if your device was lost or stolen.

# Troubleshooting: Work space and BlackBerry Balance

## My device is quarantined

Your BlackBerry device might be quarantined if you add a work account that is associated with the BlackBerry Enterprise Service 10, and the SIM card in your device doesn't have services activated correctly. Your device might also be quarantined if the BlackBerry Enterprise Service 10 detects the security of your device has been compromised.

If your device is quarantined, you are notified by your administrator that your device can't access your work space until you resolve the issue. Your administrator might delete the data on your device, prevent access to unlock your device, or remove your device from your organization's network.

To leave quarantine, try using a different SIM card or changing your service plan. If the security of your device has been compromised, you might need to wipe your device to delete all the data. For further assistance, contact your administrator.

## Remember

BlackBerry Remember is a productivity app for collecting, managing, and categorizing the information that you want to remember. With the Remember app, you can sort your information as entries in folders, categorize the entries with tags, record voice notes that are related to the entries, and add due dates to entries so that you don't forget to complete a task.

## Collecting and organizing tasks, notes, and more with the Remember app

For example, if you're planning a trip to Paris, you can create a folder called "My Trip to Paris" in the Remember app. As you're browsing the Internet on your device, you can send trip-related websites to the folder. When you remember something you need to do before the trip, you can add a to-do item to the folder, and add a due date to the item so that you don't forget about it. Everything you need to remember about the trip is in one place.

The Remember app is designed to sync with the accounts that you add to your BlackBerry device. If you added a work email account to your device, your tasks and notes from your work account are kept in sync with the Remember app in the Tasks and Notes folders, and your flagged messages are also synced. If you added an Evernote account to your device, you can access your Evernote notebooks in the Remember app and sync your Remember folders to Evernote.

# Adding a folder, task list, or an entry to the Remember app

Create folders, task lists, or entries in the Remember app to help you stay organized. The more entries you add, the easier it is to track items on your to-do list.

## Create a folder or task list in the Remember app

1. In the Remember app, tap **The More icon** > **The New Folder icon**.
2. Type a name for the folder or task list.
3. To sync your folder or task list with an account (for example, an Evernote account), choose an account from the **Save to** drop-down list.
4. To change the color of the folder, tap a different color swatch.
5. Tap **Save**.

## Add an entry to the Remember app

When you add an entry to BlackBerry Remember, you can choose between a note or task. Tasks include a completion checkbox and the option to add a due date or reminder.

If you add an entry to a folder that's synced with one of your accounts, you might not be able to choose whether the entry is a note or task.

1. Tap **Note** or **Task**.
2. Tap **The New icon**.
3. Enter the information for the entry, such as a title, notes, and a due date.
4. Tap **Save**.

## Add a due date and reminder time to a task

When you add a due date to a task in BlackBerry Remember, your BlackBerry device adds the entry to the Calendar app. To receive a reminder, you must add a specific reminder time to your task.

1. While you're adding or changing a task:
  - To add a due date, turn on the **Due Date** switch. Tap **Date**. Select a date.
  - To add a reminder time, turn on the **Reminder** switch. Tap **Date**. Select a reminder time and time.
2. Tap **Save**.

## Add tags to an entry

Tags help you to categorize your entries. For example, you can add the tag "recipe" to any entries containing recipes, and then filter your entries by that tag.

1. In the Remember app, tap an entry.
2. Tap **Tags**.
3. Type your tag name.

## Format the text in an entry

Depending on the account that your entry is associated with, you might be able to apply formatting to italicize, bold, or underline text, create lists, or change the text size and color.

1. In the Remember app, tap an entry.
2. In the **Additional notes** field, tap **The Format icon**.

## Hide synchronized folders in the Remember app

When you add an email account that is supported by Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync, by default, the tasks and notes from that account appear as synchronized folders in the Remember app. To hide these folders:

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Accounts**.
3. Tap an account.
4. On the **Edit Account** screen, turn off the **Sync Tasks** switch.

## Record a voice note in the Remember app

You can use BlackBerry Remember to record voice notes.

1. In a folder or on the Remember folder screen, tap **The Voice Note icon**.
2. Tap **The record icon**.
3. Speak your voice note.
4. When you're finished, tap **The stop recording icon > Done**.

**Tip:** You can also take pictures without leaving the Remember app. To take a picture, in an entry or on the **Tasks** or **Notes** screen, tap **The Camera icon**.

## Send something to the Remember app

Using the sharing capabilities of your BlackBerry device, you can send photos, videos, audio files, websites, or Documents To Go files to BlackBerry Remember.

1. In an app, touch and hold the item that you want to send to the Remember app.
2. Tap **Share** > **Remember**.
3. Edit the item if necessary.
4. Tap **Save**.

## Changing a folder or entry in the Remember app

### Change an entry

1. In the Remember app, tap an entry.
2. Make your changes.
3. Tap **Save**.

### Convert an entry to a note or a task

When you edit an entry in the Remember app, you can convert its format, for example, from a note to a task or vice versa. While editing an entry:

1. Tap the folder name or, if your entry isn't saved to a folder, tap **Unfiled**.
2. Tap **Task** or **Note**.
3. Select a folder or tap **None** > **The Back icon**.
4. Tap **Save**.

### Move an entry to a different folder

If you have BlackBerry Balance set up on your device, entries associated with a work account can't be moved to a non-work folder. Also, if a work folder is specifically meant for notes or tasks (for example, folders synced with an email account supported by Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync), you might not be able to move entries in that folder.

1. In the Remember app, touch and hold an entry.
2. Tap <The Move icon>, and select a new location for the entry.
3. Tap **Move**.

## Change the color of a folder or a task list

1. In the Remember app, touch and hold a folder or a task list.
2. Tap **The Edit icon**.
3. Tap a color.
4. Tap **Save**.

## Delete a folder, task list or entry in the Remember app

**CAUTION:** If you delete a folder or task list, the entries inside are also deleted.

1. In the Remember app, touch and hold a folder, task list or entry.
2. Tap **Delete**.

## Viewing and searching your entries in the Remember app

There are several ways to sort through or view your entries in the Remember app. You can use the search feature to easily find the entries you need.

### Search for an entry in the Remember app

1. Open a folder or task list.
2. Start typing your search term.
3. Tap a result.

### View Remember entries that have the same tag

If you added tags to your BlackBerry Remember entries, you can filter entries by tag.

1. In the Remember app, tap **Tags**.
2. Tap a tag to view entries with that tag.

### Sort your Remember app entries

**Note:** Depending on whether you are sorting tasks or notes, some of these options might not be available.

1. Tap **The More icon**.



2. Tap **The Sort Order icon**.
3. In the **Sort Order** drop-down list, select one of the following:
  - **Due Date**
  - **Title**
  - **Creation Date**
  - **Last Modified Date**

## Change the default view in the Remember app

You can customize the default view so that when you open BlackBerry Remember, you see what's important to you.

1. In a folder or on the Remember folder screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **The Settings icon**.
3. In the **Default View** drop-down list, select one of the following:
  - **Tasks View**
  - **Notes View**
  - **Tags View**
  - **Most Recent**

Restart the app for the changes to take effect.

## Troubleshooting: Remember app

### I can't add due dates, tags, voice notes, or attachments to an entry

If your entry is in a folder that's synced with an email account or an Exchange account that you added to your BlackBerry device, you might not be able to add due dates, tags, or attachments to the entry. Try moving the entry into a new folder.

### I can't send something to the Remember app

Some items can't be sent directly to BlackBerry Remember. You should be able to send photos, videos, audio files, websites, contacts, and Documents To Go files to the Remember app.

You might not be able to share certain items into folders that are synced with a work account.

### I can't open a folder in the Remember app

If your device is set up to use BlackBerry Balance, you might need to enter your workspace password to access all of your folders and entries.

1. In the Remember app, at the top of the screen, tap **Work Space is Locked**.
2. Enter your work space password.

## Documents To Go

Using Documents To Go, you can create, edit, and format Microsoft Word documents and Microsoft Excel spreadsheets. You can also edit, view, and present Microsoft PowerPoint presentations on your BlackBerry device.

For more information on Documents To Go, see the [Documents To Go User Guide](#).

## Print To Go

Print To Go allows you to print various files from your computer to a BlackBerry device that is associated with your BlackBerry ID over the wireless network.

For more information on Print To Go, see the [Print To Go User Guide](#).

## Enterprise IM

Enterprise IM on your BlackBerry 10 device provides you with access to your organization's instant messaging service. You can chat with other users to stay informed and connected between meetings, at lunch, and while you're on the go.

[Enterprise IM User Guide](#)

## Enterprise IM for Cisco

Enterprise IM for Cisco on your BlackBerry 10 device provides you with access to your organization's instant messaging and presence services. You can chat with other users to stay informed and connected between meetings, at lunch, and while you're on the go.

[Enterprise IM for Cisco User Guide](#)

## BlackBerry Bridge

Connect your BlackBerry 10 device to a BlackBerry PlayBook tablet to view items on your tablet's larger screen, use your smartphone as a remote control, and more.

For more information, see the [BlackBerry Bridge User Guide](#).

## BlackBerry Travel

The BlackBerry Travel app is your personal travel assistant. You can use the app to help you monitor your upcoming flights, create a travel itinerary, and book hotels, rental cars, and limousines. You can also use the BlackBerry Travel app while you're traveling to find local points of interest, calculate currency exchange rates, and monitor the weather in the city you've traveled to.

For more information on BlackBerry Travel, see the [BlackBerry Travel User Guide](#).

## BlackBerry Work Drives

You can use the BlackBerry Work Drives app to connect to your organization's shared network drive with your BlackBerry 10 device.

[BlackBerry Work Drives User Guide](#)

## Salesforce

Salesforce allows you to share posts with users and groups in your organization and collaborate with your colleagues.

For more information on Salesforce, see the [Salesforce User Guide](#).

## Adobe Reader

Adobe Reader lets you view, annotate, search, complete, and share PDF files on your BlackBerry device.

For more information on Adobe Reader, see the [Adobe Reader User Guide](#).

# Security and backup

## Passwords and locking

There are several types of locks, PINs, and passwords that you can use to help protect your BlackBerry device.

If you use your device for work, your organization might already have security settings in place, such as requiring a password to unlock your device.

### BlackBerry ID

A BlackBerry ID is an email address and password that gives you access to BlackBerry websites, apps, and services. If you change your BlackBerry device, a BlackBerry ID helps you to transfer data to your new device. Make sure that you use the same BlackBerry ID for all of your BlackBerry devices.

Log in with your BlackBerry ID to do the following and much more:

- Keep track of your app purchases and payment options from the BlackBerry World storefront.
- Make the most of BBM features, such as backing up and moving BBM contacts to a new BlackBerry device.
- Start and stop BlackBerry Protect

### Password locking and screen locking

While your device is locked, you can still receive notifications of new email and text messages (SMS and MMS), make an emergency phone call, view your battery charge level, set an alarm, or take a picture.

To conserve battery power and avoid accidental key presses, lock the screen. To help to avoid unauthorized use of your device, you need to set a device password.

In your display and security settings, you can set your device to lock itself after a certain amount of inactivity. You can also write a custom message that displays on the locked screen.

If you forget your password, it can't be recovered. BlackBerry recommends that you backup your data regularly. By default, for security reasons your device data is deleted when an incorrect password is entered ten times.

### BlackBerry Balance and the work space password

If you associate your device with your organization's network, your administrator might turn on BlackBerry Balance technology. BlackBerry Balance is designed to separate and secure areas of your device as work-only or personal-only.

Your administrator may require you to set a work space password to protect files, apps, and data associated with your organization, such as your work email account. You can use the same password for both your work space and device.

If you enter your work space password more than the allowed number of times, your work space and the contents within it are deleted. You can reduce or increase the number of allowed work password attempts in your Balance settings.

**Note:** Your administrator might not permit you to change some password lock options for your work space, such as the password requirement or the timeout duration.

## Network lock and unlock code

To use a SIM card from another service provider, for example, if you're travelling and want to use a local service provider's network, you can request unlock codes (MEP codes) from your current service provider, and change the Phone Network Lock settings for your SIM card.

If you exceed the number of allowed attempts to enter an unlock code, your SIM card will allow emergency calls only. For assistance, you can contact your service provider.

## SIM card PINs

You can set two different PINs for the SIM card in your device. You can use a SIM card PIN to help to prevent unauthorized use of your SIM card in another device. For example, if you lose your SIM card and someone tries to use it in another device, the SIM card can't be used unless the PIN is entered correctly. If you exceed the number of allowed attempts to enter the SIM card PIN, your SIM card will stop functioning. To unlock your SIM card, contact your wireless service provider for a PUK code.

A SIM card PIN2 is designed to enable certain phone features like fixed dialing.

To get a SIM card PIN, contact your service provider and turn on SIM card security in your security settings.

## Lock or unlock your device

**Tip:** A quick tap on the **Power/Lock** key will put your device to sleep. This should help you conserve battery power.

### Related information

[Lock your work space](#),216

## Lock your screen

By locking the screen, you can help prevent your BlackBerry device from sending accidental messages or pocket dialing. Locking the screen doesn't disable notifications for incoming calls or messages.

Press the **Power/Lock** key on the top of your device.

BlackBerry device showing the Power/Lock key on the top of the device.

To unlock the screen, swipe up from the bottom of the screen.

## Lock your device with a password

Looking for a simple way to help protect your BlackBerry device data and prevent unauthorized use of your device? You can set a device password so that you can lock your device when it's in open view or not in use.

1. If you don't have a password, on the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap **Image Settings > Security and Privacy > Device Password**. Turn on the **Device Password** switch. Enter a password.
2. To lock your device, do one of the following:
  - Press and hold the **Power/Lock** key. Tap **The Lock icon**.
  - To automatically lock your device after a certain amount of time, on the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap **Image Settings > Security and Privacy > Device Password**. In the **Lock Device After** drop-down list, select an interval.
  - To automatically lock your device when it's in a BlackBerry case, on the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap **Image Settings > Security and Privacy > Device Password**. Turn on the **Lock Device When Holstered** switch.
  - To allow an active app to override when your device locks, for example, so your device does not lock while you are watching a movie in the Videos app, on the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap **Image Settings > Security and Privacy > Device Password**. Turn on the **Allow Apps to Extend Password Lock Time** switch.

To unlock your device, press the **Power/Lock** key. Swipe up from the bottom of the screen. When prompted, enter your device password.

## Create a picture password

Rather than type a password to unlock your device, you can use a secret picture and number gesture, and unlock your device with one hand. Choose a picture, a number, and set up the combination. The number of combinations is nearly endless!

To turn on the picture password, you need to first set a device password. A device password is also needed in case you forget your picture password, or if you need to enter a password to access your BlackBerry device from a computer.

If your device uses BlackBerry Balance technology, in your **Balance** settings, make sure that you turn off the **Use as my device password** switch.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Security and Privacy > Device Password**.
3. Turn on the **Picture Password** switch.
4. Enter your device password.

5. Complete the instructions on the screen.

**Tip:** When you create your picture password or unlock your device, you can drag your finger anywhere on the screen so that you have a clear view of where the number is moved.

## Unlock your device with a network unlock code

To obtain the unlock codes for your BlackBerry device, contact your service provider.

Your device might be network locked which allows your device to make a mobile network connection with only your current service provider. If you plan to travel internationally and you want to use a SIM card from another service provider, you might need to enter an unlock code.

**Tip:** To see the current service provider associated with your device, on the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen. Tap **Image Settings > About**. In the **Category** drop-down list, tap **SIM Card**.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Security and Privacy > SIM Card**.
3. In the **Phone Network Lock** section, tap a locked item.
4. When prompted, enter the unlock code.

**CAUTION:** For security reasons, each unlock code can only be entered incorrectly 10 times. If you exceed the number of allowed attempts to enter an unlock code, your SIM card will allow emergency calls only. For assistance, contact your service provider.

## Change or remove your device password

**CAUTION:** If you can't remember the password for your BlackBerry device, the only way to change your password or regain access to your device is to delete all of your data by completing a security wipe.

If BlackBerry Balance technology is set up on your device, depending on the rules set by your administrator, you might not be able to remove the password for your device.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Security and Privacy > Device Password > Change Device Password**.

To stop using a password, turn off the **Device Password** switch.

### Related information

[Change your work space password](#),216

## How do I reset my device password if I forget it?

Your BlackBerry device password can't be recovered or changed if you don't enter your current password correctly. For security reasons, the only way that you can reset your password without knowing your current password is to delete all of your device data. You can do this by entering an incorrect device password multiple times.

BlackBerry recommends that you regularly create and save a backup file on your computer.

## Display text when your device is locked

You can display text on the screen of your BlackBerry device when the device is locked. You can use this feature to display a favorite quote, emergency contact information, or your own contact information so that if you lose your device, anyone who finds it can contact you.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Security and Privacy > Lock Screen**.
3. In the **Lock Screen Message** fields, type the text.

To delete the text that appears on the screen when your device is locked, delete the text in the **Lock Screen Message** fields.

## Protect your SIM card with a PIN

You can use a SIM card PIN to prevent unauthorized use of your SIM card in another device. For example, if you lose your SIM card and someone tries to use it in another device, the SIM card can't be used unless the PIN is entered correctly.

You can request the PIN for your SIM card from your service provider.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Security and Privacy > SIM Card**.
3. Turn on the **SIM Card PIN Lock** switch.
4. Type the SIM card PIN that your service provider gave you.

**CAUTION:** If you exceed the number of allowed attempts to enter the SIM card PIN, your SIM card will stop functioning. To unblock your SIM card, contact your service provider.

## Change your SIM card PIN

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Security and Privacy > SIM Card**.



- To change the PIN that protects your SIM card, tap **Change PIN 1**.
- To change the PIN that controls access to calling features such as fixed dialing, tap **Change PIN 2**.

## Backing up your device data

Using BlackBerry Link, you can back up and restore most of the data on your BlackBerry device. You can back up your settings, phone history, notes, messages, organizer data, media files, and more. For more information about backing up data with BlackBerry Link, see the [BlackBerry Link User Guide](#).

To download and install BlackBerry Link, on your computer, visit [www.blackberry.com/BlackBerryLink](http://www.blackberry.com/BlackBerryLink). BlackBerry Link supports BlackBerry smartphones running BlackBerry 10 OS and BlackBerry PlayBook tablets running BlackBerry PlayBook OS 2.1.

## BlackBerry Protect

BlackBerry Protect includes features designed to help you find your BlackBerry device and help protect your device's data if your device is ever lost or stolen. You can manage up to seven devices from your BlackBerry Protect account.

### Finding and protecting a lost device

After you turn on BlackBerry Protect in your device settings, visit <http://protect.blackberry.com> and sign in with your BlackBerry ID. On the BlackBerry Protect website, you can view the current location of your device on a map, make it ring (even if it's in silent mode), or display a custom message on your locked device to provide instructions about how to contact you. If your device is stolen, you can remotely lock it, change the password, or delete all of the data from your device.

If you add a work email account to your device, your administrator might disable BlackBerry Protect, or the ability to remotely change your password or locate your device.

### Set up BlackBerry Protect on your device

To use BlackBerry Protect, your BlackBerry device must be connected to a wireless network.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > BlackBerry Protect**.
3. Turn on the **BlackBerry Protect** switch.
4. To be able to view the current location of your device on a map, tap **Location Services**. Turn on the **Location Services** switch.

**Tip:** To use BlackBerry Protect features, go to <http://protect.blackberry.com> and sign in with your BlackBerry ID.

# Tutorial: Setting up BlackBerry Protect on a BlackBerry 10 device

This tutorial provides you with the opportunity to see and then practice setting up BlackBerry Protect on a BlackBerry 10 device.

**Note:** This tutorial is available in English only.

[Start the tutorial](#)

<http://docs.blackberry.com/tutorials/blackberryprotect/en>

## Find more information about BlackBerry Protect

For more information on BlackBerry Protect, see the [BlackBerry Protect User Guide](#).

## Troubleshooting: BlackBerry Protect

### I can't turn on BlackBerry Protect

If your BlackBerry device is associated with the BlackBerry Enterprise Service 10, this feature might be turned off by your administrator. To learn about how your device can be protected against loss or theft, contact your administrator.

## Security settings

You can set and change the security settings for applications on your BlackBerry device, and set up parental controls to restrict or limit access to features and content. You can use a smart card, and import certificates from your computer to increase the security of data on your device. And if you need to permanently delete all data from your device, you can wipe it.

## Setting security permissions for apps

BlackBerry 10 OS includes application permissions that are designed to let you control the information and features that an application can access on your BlackBerry device. For example, you can control whether an app can access your email, contacts, pictures, or the location of your device. Keep in mind that some applications require specific permissions to work. You can also help safeguard your device by downloading apps only from trusted sources, such as the BlackBerry World storefront.

When you open an app for the first time, your device might display a list of the files and features that the app wants to access. If something doesn't seem right to you, you can reject the app's request to access an item. For example, you might download a game that requests access to your messages, which might make sense if the game includes a feature to share your game score. However, if you aren't comfortable with the game having the ability to compose and view your email messages, you can turn off access to messages or delete the app. You can view or change permissions for most apps in your device settings.

For some apps, when you install the app, you are prompted to accept or decline all of the requested permissions. If you decline, the prompt will appear again the first time you open the app. You can't change the application permissions later unless you delete and reinstall the app.

## Change or view app permissions

In some apps, if you turn on permissions, the app might not work as you expect. If an app isn't working as you expect it to, consider turning on some or all of the app permissions.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Security and Privacy > Application Permissions**.
  - To view permissions for a particular app, tap an app.
  - To view which apps use a particular permission, in the **Permissions** drop-down list, tap **All**. Tap the permission that you want.
3. To turn on or turn off a permission, tap the switch.
4. Restart your BlackBerry device for the change to take effect.

### Related information

[Turn off your device,101](#)

## Wipe your device to delete your data

Before you wipe your BlackBerry device, consider backing up your data on a computer. A security wipe is designed to permanently delete your data so it can't be recovered. This includes email accounts, downloaded apps, media files, documents, browser bookmarks, and settings.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Security and Privacy > Security Wipe**.
3. Type **blackberry**.
4. Tap **Delete Data**.  
When the security wipe is complete, your device is turned off automatically. To turn on your device, press the **Power/Lock** key.

**Tip:** If you are planning to give away or recycle your device, remember to also remove your SIM card and media card.

### Related information

[Delete your work space,216](#)

## Using Parental Controls

Parental Controls are designed to give you more control over how a BlackBerry device can be used and contacted. You can turn off access to certain apps, features, and content. You can also restrict incoming phone calls and messages to people in the Contacts app.

Parental Controls settings are protected with a password, making them difficult to change or turn off without your knowledge. You can set your device so that the Parental Controls password is required to add an email or social networking account, or to purchase an app from the BlackBerry World storefront.

**Note:** If BlackBerry Balance technology is turned on, the Parental Controls feature is not available.

### Restrict or limit access to features and content

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Security and Privacy > Parental Controls**.
3. Turn on the **Parental Controls** switch.
4. Enter the Parental Controls password.
5. Tap to change the options.

## Import a certificate from your computer

1. Do one of the following:
  - To import the certificate using a USB connection, connect your BlackBerry device to your computer using a USB cable. If necessary, on your computer, enter your device password.
  - To import the certificate using a Wi-Fi connection, on your device, swipe down from the top of the home screen. Tap **Image Settings > Storage and Access**. Turn on the **Access using Wi-Fi** switch. Type a storage access password. Tap **Identification on Network** and make note of the **Username**.
2. On your device, on the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
3. Tap **Image Settings > About**.
4. In the **Category** drop-down list, tap **Network**.
5. In the **Wi-Fi** or **USB** section, make note of the **IPv4** address.
6. On your computer, navigate to and copy a certificate file
  - If your computer uses a Windows operating system, in a Run command, type the IP address in the following format: \\xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx.
  - If your computer uses a Mac operating system, select **Go > Connect to Server**. Type the IP address in the following format: smb://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx.
7. Do one of the following:

- If your computer uses a Windows operating system, open the **media\downloads** folder. If necessary, enter the username and storage access password.
  - If your computer uses a Mac operating system, open the **media/downloads** folder. If necessary, enter the username and storage access password.
8. Paste the certificate into the **media\downloads** or **media/downloads** folder.
  9. On your device, tap **The Back icon** > **Security and Privacy** > **Certificates** > **Import**.
  10. Follow the instructions on the screen.

## About smart cards

You can use a smart card and your device password to unlock your BlackBerry device. You can also use smart card certificates to send S/MIME protected messages.

Smart cards store certificates and private keys. You can import certificates from a smart card to your device by using the BlackBerry Smart Card Reader or a microSD smart card. Private key operations such as signing and decryption use the smart card. Public key operations such as verification and encryption use the public certificates on your device.

## Use two-factor authentication

You can use a smart card and your BlackBerry device password to unlock your device.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings** > **Security and Privacy** > **Device Password** > **Authenticator Settings**.
  - To set your device to use a smart card to unlock your device or your work space, in the **Smart Card User Authenticator** drop-down list, tap **Device or Work**.
  - To set your device to remember the format of the password that you type in a password field (numeric or alphanumeric), turn on the **Smart Password Entry** switch.
  - To set your device to lock when you remove your smart card from your device or BlackBerry Smart Card Reader, turn on the **Lock on Card Removal** switch.

## Import a certificate from a smart card

You can import a certificate from a microSD smart card inserted in your BlackBerry device, or a BlackBerry Smart Card Reader that is paired with your device using Bluetooth technology.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings** > **Security and Privacy** > **Smart Card** > **Import Certificates**.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen.

## Store your smart card password on your device

You can set your BlackBerry device to temporarily store your smart card password, so that you don't have to enter it as often. To clear the cache, lock your device.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Security and Privacy > Smart Card**.
3. Turn on the **PIN Caching** switch.

## Turn off LED notifications for a smart card

The red LED flashes when your BlackBerry device accesses data on a smart card. You can turn off this indicator.

1. On the home screen, swipe down from the top of the screen.
2. Tap **Image Settings > Security and Privacy > Smart Card**.
3. Turn off the **LED Activity Indicator** switch.

# Legal notice

©2014 BlackBerry. All rights reserved. BlackBerry® and related trademarks, names, and logos are the property of BlackBerry Limited and are registered and/or used in the U.S. and countries around the world.

Adobe and Flash are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated. Android, Gmail, and YouTube are trademarks of Google Inc. Apple, iCal, iPhone and Mac are trademarks of Apple Inc. Bluetooth is a trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Box is a trademark of Box Inc. DLNA Certified is a trademark of the Digital Living Network Alliance. Evernote is a trademark of Evernote Corporation. Facebook is a trademark of Facebook Inc. GSM is a trademark of the GSM MOU Association. HDMI is a trademark of HDMI Licensing, LLC. IBM Notes and IBM Notes Traveler are trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation. joyn is a trademark of GSMA. LinkedIn is a trademark of LinkedIn Corporation. Microsoft, ActiveSync, Excel, Outlook, PowerPoint, and Windows are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation. QR Code is a trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED in Japan and other countries. Sina Weibo is a trademark of Beijing Sina Internet Information Service Co. Ltd. Sorenson Spark is a trademark of Sorenson Media, Inc. Twitter is a trademark of Twitter, Inc. Miracast, Wi-Fi, and Wi-Fi Protected Setup are trademarks of the Wi-Fi Alliance. Cisco WebEx and WebEx are trademarks of Cisco Systems, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and certain other countries. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

This documentation including all documentation incorporated by reference herein such as documentation provided or made available at [www.blackberry.com/go/docs](http://www.blackberry.com/go/docs) is provided or made accessible "AS IS" and "AS AVAILABLE" and without condition, endorsement, guarantee, representation, or warranty of any kind by BlackBerry Limited and its affiliated companies ("BlackBerry") and BlackBerry assumes no responsibility for any typographical, technical, or other inaccuracies, errors, or omissions in this documentation. In order to protect BlackBerry proprietary and confidential information and/or trade secrets, this documentation may describe some aspects of BlackBerry technology in generalized terms. BlackBerry reserves the right to periodically change information that is contained in this documentation; however, BlackBerry makes no commitment to provide any such changes, updates, enhancements, or other additions to this documentation to you in a timely manner or at all.

This documentation might contain references to third-party sources of information, hardware or software, products or services including components and content such as content protected by copyright and/or third-party websites (collectively the "Third Party Products and Services"). BlackBerry does not control, and is not responsible for, any Third Party Products and Services including, without limitation the content, accuracy, copyright compliance, compatibility, performance, trustworthiness, legality, decency, links, or any other aspect of Third Party Products and Services. The inclusion of a reference to Third Party Products and Services in this documentation does not imply endorsement by BlackBerry of the Third Party Products and Services or the third party in any way.

EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT SPECIFICALLY PROHIBITED BY APPLICABLE LAW IN YOUR JURISDICTION, ALL CONDITIONS, ENDORSEMENTS, GUARANTEES, REPRESENTATIONS, OR WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY CONDITIONS, ENDORSEMENTS, GUARANTEES, REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES OF DURABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR USE, MERCHANTABILITY, MERCHANTABLE QUALITY, NON-INFRINGEMENT, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OR TITLE, OR ARISING FROM A STATUTE OR CUSTOM OR A COURSE OF DEALING OR USAGE OF TRADE, OR RELATED TO THE DOCUMENTATION OR ITS USE, OR PERFORMANCE OR NON-PERFORMANCE OF ANY SOFTWARE, HARDWARE, SERVICE, OR ANY THIRD PARTY PRODUCTS AND SERVICES REFERENCED HEREIN, ARE HEREBY EXCLUDED. YOU MAY ALSO HAVE OTHER RIGHTS THAT VARY BY STATE OR PROVINCE. SOME JURISDICTIONS MAY NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS. TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS RELATING TO THE DOCUMENTATION TO THE EXTENT THEY CANNOT BE EXCLUDED AS SET OUT ABOVE, BUT CAN BE LIMITED, ARE



HEREBY LIMITED TO NINETY (90) DAYS FROM THE DATE YOU FIRST ACQUIRED THE DOCUMENTATION OR THE ITEM THAT IS THE SUBJECT OF THE CLAIM.

TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW IN YOUR JURISDICTION, IN NO EVENT SHALL BLACKBERRY BE LIABLE FOR ANY TYPE OF DAMAGES RELATED TO THIS DOCUMENTATION OR ITS USE, OR PERFORMANCE OR NON-PERFORMANCE OF ANY SOFTWARE, HARDWARE, SERVICE, OR ANY THIRD PARTY PRODUCTS AND SERVICES REFERENCED HEREIN INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION ANY OF THE FOLLOWING DAMAGES: DIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, EXEMPLARY, INCIDENTAL, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, PUNITIVE, OR AGGRAVATED DAMAGES, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS OR REVENUES, FAILURE TO REALIZE ANY EXPECTED SAVINGS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, LOSS OF BUSINESS INFORMATION, LOSS OF BUSINESS OPPORTUNITY, OR CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, PROBLEMS ASSOCIATED WITH ANY APPLICATIONS USED IN CONJUNCTION WITH BLACKBERRY PRODUCTS OR SERVICES, DOWNTIME COSTS, LOSS OF THE USE OF BLACKBERRY PRODUCTS OR SERVICES OR ANY PORTION THEREOF OR OF ANY AIRTIME SERVICES, COST OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS, COSTS OF COVER, FACILITIES OR SERVICES, COST OF CAPITAL, OR OTHER SIMILAR PECUNIARY LOSSES, WHETHER OR NOT SUCH DAMAGES WERE FORESEEN OR UNFORESEEN, AND EVEN IF BLACKBERRY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW IN YOUR JURISDICTION, BLACKBERRY SHALL HAVE NO OTHER OBLIGATION, DUTY, OR LIABILITY WHATSOEVER IN CONTRACT, TORT, OR OTHERWISE TO YOU INCLUDING ANY LIABILITY FOR NEGLIGENCE OR STRICT LIABILITY.

THE LIMITATIONS, EXCLUSIONS, AND DISCLAIMERS HEREIN SHALL APPLY: (A) IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF ACTION, DEMAND, OR ACTION BY YOU INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO BREACH OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE, TORT, STRICT LIABILITY OR ANY OTHER LEGAL THEORY AND SHALL SURVIVE A FUNDAMENTAL BREACH OR BREACHES OR THE FAILURE OF THE ESSENTIAL PURPOSE OF THIS AGREEMENT OR OF ANY REMEDY CONTAINED HEREIN; AND (B) TO BLACKBERRY AND ITS AFFILIATED COMPANIES, THEIR SUCCESSORS, ASSIGNS, AGENTS, SUPPLIERS (INCLUDING AIRTIME SERVICE PROVIDERS), AUTHORIZED BLACKBERRY DISTRIBUTORS (ALSO INCLUDING AIRTIME SERVICE PROVIDERS) AND THEIR RESPECTIVE DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, AND INDEPENDENT CONTRACTORS.

IN ADDITION TO THE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS SET OUT ABOVE, IN NO EVENT SHALL ANY DIRECTOR, EMPLOYEE, AGENT, DISTRIBUTOR, SUPPLIER, INDEPENDENT CONTRACTOR OF BLACKBERRY OR ANY AFFILIATES OF BLACKBERRY HAVE ANY LIABILITY ARISING FROM OR RELATED TO THE DOCUMENTATION.

Prior to subscribing for, installing, or using any Third Party Products and Services, it is your responsibility to ensure that your airtime service provider has agreed to support all of their features. Some airtime service providers might not offer Internet browsing functionality with a subscription to the BlackBerry® Internet Service. Check with your service provider for availability, roaming arrangements, service plans and features. Installation or use of Third Party Products and Services with BlackBerry's products and services may require one or more patent, trademark, copyright, or other licenses in order to avoid infringement or violation of third party rights. You are solely responsible for determining whether to use Third Party Products and Services and if any third party licenses are required to do so, if required you are responsible for acquiring them. You should not install or use Third Party Products and Services until all necessary licenses have been acquired. Any Third Party Products and Services that are provided with BlackBerry's products and services are provided as a convenience to you and are provided "AS IS" with no express or implied conditions, endorsements, guarantees, representations, or warranties of any kind by BlackBerry and BlackBerry assumes no liability whatsoever, in relation thereto. Your use of Third Party Products and Services shall be governed by and subject to you agreeing to the terms of



separate licenses and other agreements applicable hereto with third parties, except to the extent expressly covered by a license or other agreement with BlackBerry.

Certain features outlined in this documentation require a minimum version of BlackBerry Enterprise Server, BlackBerry Desktop Software, and/or BlackBerry Device Software.

The terms of use of any BlackBerry product or service are set out in a separate license or other agreement with BlackBerry applicable thereto. NOTHING IN THIS DOCUMENTATION IS INTENDED TO SUPERSEDE ANY EXPRESS WRITTEN AGREEMENTS OR WARRANTIES PROVIDED BY BLACKBERRY FOR PORTIONS OF ANY BLACKBERRY PRODUCT OR SERVICE OTHER THAN THIS DOCUMENTATION.

The information provided in this guide is applicable to the following smartphone models:

---

SQW100-1 / RGY1811W

---

BlackBerry Limited  
2200 University Avenue East  
Waterloo, Ontario  
Canada N2K 0A7

BlackBerry UK Limited  
200 Bath Road  
Slough, Berkshire SL1 3XE  
United Kingdom

Published in Canada